Embracing complexity.
Delivering simplicity.℠

2018 ANNUAL REPORT

2019 PROXY STATEMENT

exela
TECHNOLOGIES

Embracing complexity. Delivering simplicity.[SM]

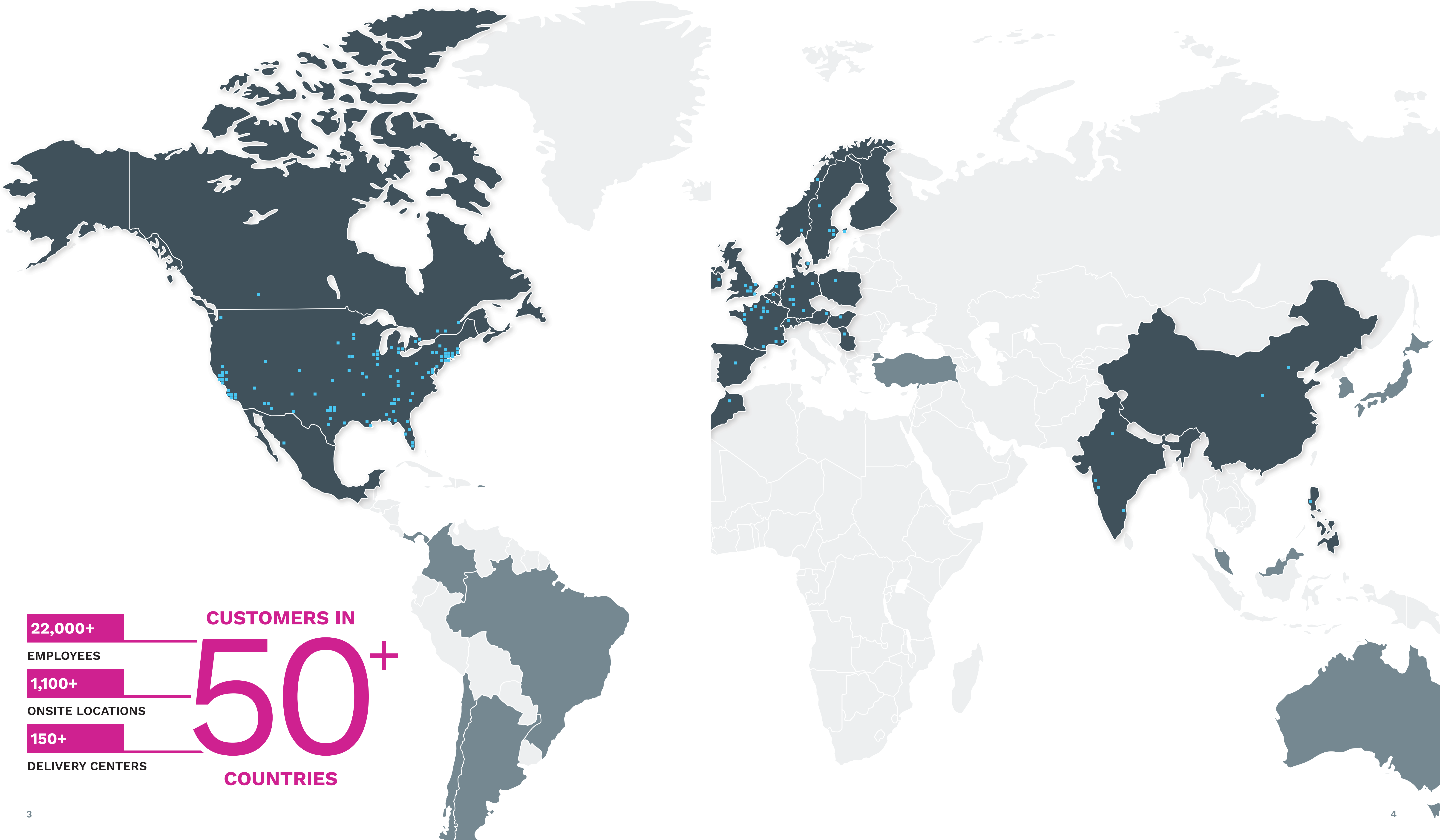
THE PREEMINENT GLOBAL BUSINESS PROCESS AUTOMATION PROVIDER

Powering the future of business, today.

Exela is a location-agnostic global BPA leader combining industry-specific and multi-industry enterprise software and solutions with decades of experience. Our BPA suite of solutions are deployed in banking, healthcare, insurance and other industries to support mission-critical environments. Exela is a leader in workflow automation, attended and unattended cognitive automation, digital mailrooms, print communications, and payment processing, with deployments across the globe. Exela partners with customers to improve user experience and quality through operational efficiency. Exela serves over 4,000 customers across more than 50 countries, through a secure, cloud-enabled global delivery model. We are 22,000 employees strong across the Americas, Europe and Asia. Our customer list includes 60% of the Fortune® 100, along with many of the world's largest retail chains, banks, law firms, healthcare insurance payers and providers and telecom companies.

STOCK

NASDAQ: **XELA**



22,000+
EMPLOYEES

1,100+
ONSITE LOCATIONS

150+
DELIVERY CENTERS

CUSTOMERS IN
50+
COUNTRIES

PROXY STATEMENT
& MEETING NOTICE

NOTICE OF ANNUAL MEETING OF STOCKHOLDERS

May 31, 2019

The Annual Meeting of Stockholders (the "Annual Meeting") of Exela Technologies, Inc. ("Exela" or the "Company") will be held at the Company's Innovation Center, 2701 E. Grauwyler Road, Irving, Texas, 75061, at 9:00 a.m., on Friday, May 31, 2019, for the purpose of:

1. Electing to the Board of Directors the three nominees named in the accompanying Proxy Statement who have been nominated by the Board of Directors to continue to serve as Class B directors and whose current terms will expire at the Annual Meeting;

2. Acting upon a proposal to ratify the appointment of KPMG LLP as the Company's independent registered public accounting firm for the year ending December 31, 2019; and

3. Acting upon a proposal to approve, on a non-binding, advisory basis, compensation of the Company's named executive officers as described in the accompanying Proxy Statement.

The Board of Directors has fixed the close of business on April 26, 2019 as the date for determining stockholders of record entitled to receive notice of, and to vote at, the Annual Meeting.

The Board of Directors unanimously recommends that stockholders vote their shares in favor of the election of the Class B nominees, and in favor of Proposals 2 and 3.

This Notice and accompanying Proxy Statement and proxy or voting instruction card will be first mailed to you and to other stockholders of record commencing on or about April 30, 2019. All stockholders are cordially invited to attend the Annual Meeting. Whether or not you plan to attend, I hope that you will vote as soon as possible. Please review the instructions on the proxy or voting instruction card regarding your voting options.

By Order of the Board of Directors

Par Chadha
Chairman of the Board

April 30, 2019

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Exela Technologies, Inc.

2701 E. Grauwyler Road
Irving, Texas 75061

PROXY STATEMENT

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS ABOUT THE ANNUAL MEETING AND VOTING

Why did I receive this proxy statement?

We have sent you this Notice of Annual Meeting and Proxy Statement and proxy or voting instruction card because the Board of Directors (the "Board of Directors" or the "Board") of Exela Technologies, Inc. ("Exela" or the "Company," "we" and "us") is soliciting your proxy to vote at our Annual Meeting of Stockholders on May 31, 2019 (the "Annual Meeting"). This Proxy Statement contains information about the items being voted on at the Annual Meeting and information about us.

Who is entitled to vote?

You may vote on each matter properly submitted for stockholder action at the Annual Meeting if you were the record holder of our common stock, par value $0.0001 per share ("Common Stock"), as of the close of business on April 26, 2019. On April 26, 2019, there were 152,692,140 shares of Common Stock issued and 150,142,955 shares outstanding and entitled to vote at the Annual Meeting.

How many votes do I have?

Each share of our Common Stock that you own entitles you to one vote on each matter properly submitted for stockholder action at the Annual Meeting.

What am I voting on?

You will be voting on the following:

Proposal 1: To elect to the Board of Directors the three nominees named in this Proxy Statement who have been nominated by the Board of Directors to continue to serve as Class B directors and whose current terms will expire at the Annual Meeting;

Proposal 2: To ratify the appointment of KPMG LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for the year ending December 31, 2019; and

Proposal 3: To approve, on a non-binding, advisory basis, compensation of the Company's named executive officers as described in this Proxy Statement.

How do I vote?

You may vote in the following ways:

By Mail: If you are a holder of record, you may vote by marking, dating and signing your proxy card and returning it by mail in the enclosed postage-paid envelope. If you hold your shares in street name, please complete and mail the voting instruction card.

By Telephone or Internet: If you hold your shares in street name, you may be able to provide instructions to vote your shares by telephone or over the Internet. Please follow the instructions on your voting instruction card.

At the Annual Meeting: If you are planning to attend the Annual Meeting and wish to vote your shares in person, we will give you a ballot at the meeting. If your shares are held in street name, you need to bring an account statement or letter from your broker, bank or other nominee indicating that you were the beneficial owner of the shares on April 26, 2019, the record date for voting. You will also need to obtain a proxy from your bank, broker or other nominee to vote the shares you beneficially own at the meeting. **Even if you plan to be present at the Annual Meeting, we encourage you to complete and mail the enclosed card to vote your shares by proxy.**

What if I return my proxy or voting instruction card but do not mark it to show how I am voting?

Your shares will be voted according to the instructions you have indicated on your proxy or voting instruction card. If no direction is indicated, your shares will be voted "FOR" the election of the Class B nominees and "FOR" Proposals 2 and 3.

May I change my vote after I return my proxy or voting instruction card?

You may change your vote at any time before your shares are voted at the Annual Meeting in one of three ways:

- Notify our Corporate Secretary in writing before the Annual Meeting that you are revoking your proxy;
- Submit another proxy by mail, telephone or the Internet (or voting instruction card if you hold your shares in street name) with a later date; or
- Vote in person at the Annual Meeting.

What does it mean if I receive more than one proxy or voting instruction card?

It means you have multiple accounts at the transfer agent and/or with banks and stockbrokers. Please vote all of your shares.

What constitutes a quorum?

Any number of stockholders, together holding at least a majority in voting power of the capital stock of the Company issued and outstanding and generally entitled to vote in the election of directors, present in person or represented by proxy at any meeting duly called, shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of all business. Abstentions and "broker non-votes" are counted as shares "present" at the meeting for purposes of determining whether a quorum exists. A "broker non-vote" occurs when shares held of record by a bank, broker or other holder of record for a beneficial owner are deemed present at the meeting for purposes of a quorum but are not voted on a particular proposal because that record holder does not have discretionary voting power for that particular matter under the applicable rules of the Nasdaq Stock Market LLC ("Nasdaq") and has not received voting instructions from the beneficial owner.

What vote is required in order to approve Proposals 1 and 2?

Proposal 1 (Election of Directors): The three nominees named in this Proxy Statement who have been nominated by the Board of Directors to continue to serve as Class B directors will be elected to the Class B directorships by plurality vote. This means that the three nominees with the most votes cast in their favor will be elected to the Class B directorships. Votes withheld from one or more director nominees will have no effect on the election of any director from whom votes are withheld. If you do not want to vote your shares for a nominee, you may indicate that in the space provided on the proxy card or the voting instruction card or withhold authority as prompted during telephone or Internet voting. Subject to the Director Nomination Agreements, in the unanticipated event that a director nominee is unable or declines to serve, the proxy will be voted for such other person as shall be designated by the Board of Directors to replace the nominee, or the Board may choose to reduce the number of directors.

Proposal 2 (Ratification of Appointment of KPMG LLP): This proposal requires the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the voting power of our outstanding Common Stock present in person or represented by proxy at the Annual Meeting and entitled to vote on Proposal 2. Abstentions will have the effect of votes against the proposal.

What is the standard for approving the non-binding, advisory proposal (Proposal 3)?

Proposal 3 (Advisory Vote on Compensation Paid to Named Executive Officers): This proposal requires the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the voting power of our outstanding Common Stock present in person or represented by proxy at the Annual Meeting and entitled to vote on Proposal 3. Abstentions will have the effect of votes against the proposal. "Broker non-votes," if any, will not have any effect on the adoption of the proposal. The results of this vote are not binding on the Board, whether or not it is adopted by the aforementioned voting standard. In evaluating the vote on this advisory resolution, the Board will consider the voting results in their entirety.

May my broker vote my shares?

Brokers may no longer use discretionary authority to vote shares on the election of directors or non-routine matters if they have not received instructions from their clients. It is important, therefore, that you cast your vote if you want it to count in the election of directors (Proposal 1) or to be considered in the advisory vote on compensation paid to our named executive officers (Proposal 3). Your broker has the authority to exercise discretion with respect to ratification of appointment of KPMG LLP (Proposal 2) if it has not received your instructions for that proposal because that matter is treated as routine under applicable rules.

How will voting on any other business be conducted?

We do not know of any business or proposals to be considered at the Annual Meeting other than those set forth in this Proxy Statement. If any other business is properly presented at the Annual Meeting, the proxies received from our stockholders give the proxy holders the authority to vote on the matter in their sole discretion. In accordance with our Bylaws, no business (other than the election of the three Class B nominees and Proposals 2 and 3) may be brought before the Annual Meeting, or any adjournment or postponement thereof, unless such business is brought by or at the direction of the Board or a committee of the Board.

Who will count the votes?

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust will act as the inspector of election and will tabulate the votes.

IMPORTANT NOTICE REGARDING THE AVAILABILITY OF PROXY MATERIALS FOR THE STOCKHOLDER MEETING TO BE HELD ON MAY 31, 2019

This 2019 Proxy Statement, a form of proxy and Exela's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2018 are available at: www.exelatech.com and at www.cstproxy.com/exelatech/2019.

PROPOSAL 1—ELECTION OF DIRECTORS

The Company has three classes of directors serving staggered three-year terms, with Class A consisting of two directorships and each of Class B and Class C consisting of three directorships. The terms of the Class A, B and C directorships expire on the date of the Annual Meeting in 2021, 2019, and 2020, respectively.

At the Annual Meeting, stockholders will be asked to elect the three nominees named in this Proxy Statement who have been nominated by the Board of Directors to continue to serve as Class B directors and whose current terms will expire at the Annual Meeting. Mr. Joshua M. Black, Mr. James G. Reynolds and Mr. John H. Rexford, each of whom is a current Class B director, are the nominees to serve as Class B directors for a new three-year term. Each nominee, if elected, will serve for a term of three years and will remain in office until a qualified successor director has been elected or until he resigns or is removed from the Board. Class B directors will be elected by plurality vote.

The Board of Directors unanimously recommends a vote FOR the director nominees.

Nominees for Election to the Board of Directors in 2019

The following are brief biographical sketches of each of our nominees, including their experience, qualifications, attributes and skills, which, taken as a whole, have enabled the Board to conclude that each nominee should, in light of the Company's business and structure, serve as a director of the Company.

Nominees for Class B Directorships—Term Expiring in 2022

Joshua M. Black

Age: 32

Director Since: July 2017

Class: Class B

Business Experience: Joshua Black is a Principal of Apollo Global Management, LLC, where he has been employed since 2011. From 2010 to 2011, Mr. Black was a member of the Leveraged Finance Group of Goldman, Sachs & Co. From 2008 to 2010, Mr. Black was a member of the Financial Institutions Group within the Investment Banking Division of Goldman, Sachs & Co. Mr. Black served as director of Environmental Solutions Worldwide Inc. from January 2011 to March 2015 and Athene USA Corporation from October 1, 2013 to January 22, 2015. Mr. Black currently serves on the board of SCA Acquisition Holdings, LLC (parent of Sun Country Airlines) and Tegra Topco, L.P. Mr. Black graduated cum laude from Princeton University in 2008 with a major in Religion. We believe Mr. Black's significant investment and financial expertise make him well-qualified to serve as a director of Exela.

James G. Reynolds

Age: 50

Director Since: July 2017

Class: Class B

Business Experience: Mr. Reynolds is our Chief Financial Officer and has served in that role since the closing of the Business Combination among Exela, SourceHOV Holdings, Inc. ("SourceHOV"), and Novitex Holdings, Inc. ("Novitex") on July 12, 2017 (the "Business Combination"). Mr. Reynolds served as Co-Chairman of SourceHOV from 2014 until the closing of the Business Combination in 2017. Mr. Reynolds is also the Chief Operating Officer and a Partner at HandsOn Global Management ("HGM"), bringing over 25 years of industry experience to the team. Prior to HGM, Mr. Reynolds held numerous executive management or senior advisory positions at SourceHOV and its related subsidiaries and predecessor companies, including serving as Chief Financial Officer for HOV Services, LLC from 2007 to 2011 and Vice President and Corporate Controller for Lason from 2001 to 2006. Mr. Reynolds was a Senior Manager in the Business Advisory Services Practice at PricewaterhouseCoopers from 1990 to 2001. Mr. Reynolds is a C.P.A. and holds a B.S. in Accounting from Michigan State University. We believe that Mr. Reynold's significant industry and management experience make him well-qualified to serve as a director of the Company.

John H. Rexford

Age: 62

Director Since: July 2017

Class: Class B

Business Experience: Mr. Rexford is the Managing Director of Ramona Park Consulting LLC, which he founded in 2016. Mr. Rexford has over 36 years of finance experience that includes serving as Global M&A Head from 2010 to 2015 at the Xerox Corporation and serving in various positions at Affiliated Computer Services, Inc. (which was acquired by the Xerox Corporation), including Chief Financial Officer from 2006 to 2007, Executive Vice President from 2001 to 2009 and Senior Vice President of Mergers and Acquisitions from 1996 to 2001. We believe that Mr. Rexford's prior experiences give him an understanding of the business models, structures and attributes of Exela, as well as the risks and operating environment of Exela, which make him well-qualified to serve as a director of Exela.

Continuing Members of the Board of Directors

The following are brief biographical sketches of each of our directors whose term continues beyond 2019 and who is not subject to election this year, including his experience, qualifications, attributes and skills, which, taken as a whole, have enabled the Board to conclude that each director should, in light of the Company's business and structure, serve as a director of the Company.

Class A Directors—Term Expiring in 2021

Ronald Cogburn

Age: 63

Director Since: July 2017

Class: Class A

Business Experience: Mr. Cogburn is our Chief Executive Officer and served as Chief Executive Officer of SourceHOV from 2013 until the closing of the Business Combination. Mr. Cogburn has been part of companies that were predecessors to SourceHOV since 1993, bringing over 30 years of diversified experience in executive management, construction claims consulting, litigation support, program management project management, cost estimating, damages assessment and general building construction. Mr. Cogburn has also been a principal of HGM since 2003. Prior to his role as Chief Executive Officer of SourceHOV, Mr. Cogburn was SourceHOV's President, KPO from March 2011 to July 2013. Prior to this role, Mr. Cogburn was the President of HOV Services, LLC from January 2005 to September 2007, providing executive leadership during the company's growth to its IPO on the India Stock Exchange in September 2006. Mr. Cogburn has a BSCE in Structural Design/Construction Management from Texas A&M University and is a registered Professional Engineer. We believe that

Mr. Cogburn's significant, diversified business experience in Exela's industry make him well-qualified to serve as a director of Exela.

Nathaniel J. Lipman

Age: 54

Director Since: July 2017

Class: Class A

Business Experience: Mr. Lipman has held numerous executive management or senior advisory positions in Affinion Group Holdings, Inc., a public company that provides customer engagement and loyalty solutions, and/or its predecessors and subsidiaries, including serving as its Chief Executive Officer from 2005 to 2012 and Executive Chairman of the board of directors from 2012 to November 2015. From November 2015 until March 2018, Mr. Lipman served as a consultant to Affinion Group Holdings, Inc. Since December 2015, Mr. Lipman has served as a Special Advisor to the Chairman of the Upside Travel Group, Inc., a business travel company, where he was a founding member of the Board of Managers. From 1996 to 1999, Mr. Lipman served as Senior Executive Vice President, Corporate Development and Strategic Planning for Planet Hollywood International, Inc., an entertainment and restaurant company. Prior to his tenure at Planet Hollywood, Mr. Lipman was Senior Vice President and General Counsel of House of Blues Entertainment, Inc., an entertainment and restaurant company, Senior Corporate Counsel at The Walt Disney Company, a diversified worldwide entertainment company, and a corporate associate at Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher and Flom, LLP. Mr. Lipman serves on the board of directors of Trusted Media Brands, Inc., Diamond Resorts International and Redbox Automated Holdings, LLC. We believe that Mr. Lipman's significant experience and numerous directorships make him well-qualified to serve as a director of Exela.

Class C Directors—Term Expiring in 2020

Par Chadha

Age: 64

Director Since: July 2017

Class: Class C

Business Experience: Mr. Chadha is the Chairman of our board of directors and is the founder, Chief Executive Officer and Chief Investment Officer of HGM, a family office, formed in 2001, and the principal stockholder of SourceHOV immediately prior to the Business Combination on July 12, 2017. Mr. Chadha also served as Chairman of SourceHOV from 2011 until the closing of the Business Combination. Mr. Chadha brings over 40 years of experience in building businesses in the Americas, Europe and Asia, including execution of mergers and acquisitions, integration of businesses and public offerings. Mr. Chadha is co-founder and owner of Rule 14, LLC, a leading big data mining and automation company formed in 2011, and during his career, Mr. Chadha has founded or co-founded other technology companies in the fields of metro optical networks, systems-on-silicon and communications. Through HGM, Mr. Chadha previously participated in director and executive roles in joint ventures with major financial and investment institutions, including Apollo, as well as other portfolio companies of HGM, and currently holds and manages investments in evolving financial technology, health technology and communications industries. Since 2005, Mr. Chadha has served as a Director of HOV Services Limited, a company listed on the National Stock Exchange of India, acting as its Chairman from 2009 to 2011. We believe Mr. Chadha's significant experience in the public information technology and business services industry and his experience with mergers and integration of businesses make him well-qualified to serve as a director of Exela.

Matthew H. Nord

Age: 39

Director Since: July 2017

Class: Class C

Business Experience: Mr. Nord is a Senior Partner at Apollo Private Equity, having joined in 2003. Prior to that time, Mr. Nord was a member of the Investment Banking division of Salomon Smith Barney Inc. Mr. Nord serves on the board of directors of Mount Olympus Holdings, Inc. (parent of West Corporation), Prime Security Services Borrower, LLC. (parent of ADT, Inc.), DSB Parent, L.P. (parent of LifePoint Health, Inexc.) and Presidio, Inc. Mr. Nord also serves on the Board of Trustees of Montefiore Health System and on the Board of Overseers of the University of Pennsylvania's School of Design. Mr. Nord previously served on the boards of directors of Affinion Group Holdings Inc., Constellium N.V., Noranda Aluminum Holding Corporation, and MidCap Financial Holdings, LLC. Mr. Nord graduated summa cum laude with a BS in Economics from the University of Pennsylvania's Wharton School of Business. We believe that Mr. Nord's work at Apollo and his prior experience in investment banking and analyzing, financing and investing in public and private companies, makes him well-qualified to serve as a director of Exela.

One Class C directorship is vacant following the resignation of Gordon Coburn, as described below.

Additional Information Concerning the Board of Directors of the Company

On February 21, 2019, Gordon Coburn resigned from the Board of the Company and all committees of the Board, effective immediately. The Company notified Nasdaq that as a result of Gordon Coburn's resignation from the Company's Board, the Company was no longer in compliance with Nasdaq Listing Rule 5605(c)(2)(A), which requires the Company's Audit Committee to be composed of at least three independent directors. Mr. Coburn did not resign due to any disagreement with the Company or its management. The third seat on the Company's Audit Committee remains vacant as of April 30, 2019.

During the 2018 calendar year the Board of Directors held six meetings. No director attended fewer than 75% of the aggregate of the total number of meetings of the Board of Directors or of the committees of the Board of which he was a member. We attempt to schedule our annual meeting of stockholders at a time and date to accommodate attendance by our board of directors taking into account the directors' schedules. All directors are encouraged to attend our annual meeting of stockholders. The date of our last annual meeting was June 6, 2018. Messrs. Cogburn and Reynolds were present in person at our last annual meeting, while Messrs. Chadha, Lipman, Coburn and Rexford were present via telephone.

Director Independence

The Company's Common Stock is listed on Nasdaq, and the Company is required to comply with the Nasdaq listing requirements regarding independent directors. Under Nasdaq's Marketplace Rules, the definition of an "independent director" is a person other than an executive officer or employee of the company or any other individual having a relationship which, in the opinion of the issuer's board of directors, would interfere with the exercise of independent judgment in carrying out the responsibilities of a director. Our Board of Directors has reviewed such information as the Board has deemed appropriate for purposes of determining whether any of the directors has a relationship which, in the opinion of the Board, would interfere with the exercise of independent judgment in carrying out the responsibilities of a director, including the beneficial ownership by our directors of Common Stock (see "Ownership of Common Stock—Common Stock Ownership by Directors and Executive Officers") and transactions between the Company, on the one hand, and our directors and their affiliates, on the other hand (see "Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions"). Based on such review, the Board of Directors has determined that we have five "independent directors" as defined in the Nasdaq listing standards and applicable Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") rules, Messrs. Chadha, Lipman, Rexford, Nord and Black. Independent directors, therefore, constitute a majority of our Board. Non-management directors meet periodically in executive session without members of the Company's management at the conclusion of regularly scheduled Board meetings. In addition, Messrs. Lipman and Rexford qualify as independent directors for the purpose of serving on the audit committee of the Company under SEC rules.

Director Nomination Agreements

At the closing of the Business Combination, the Company entered into a Director Nomination Agreement (the "Director Nomination Agreement") with each of Novitex Parent, L.P. and certain affiliates of HOVS LLC and HandsOn Fund 4 I, LLC (each a "Nominating Stockholder"), which will remain in effect for so long as the applicable Nominating Stockholder (or Nominating Stockholder's affiliate) continues to beneficially own at least 5% of the then outstanding shares of our Common Stock (without giving effect to the exercise of any outstanding warrants to purchase our Common Stock). The Director Nomination Agreements require that the individuals nominated for election as directors by our Board of Directors shall include a number of individuals selected by each of the Nominating Stockholders such that, upon the election of each such individual, and each other individual nominated by or at the direction of our Board of Directors or a duly-authorized committee of the Board, as a director of our Company, the individuals selected by each Nominating Stockholder (or Nominating Stockholder's affiliate) shall be: for so long as the applicable Nominating Stockholder beneficially owns at least 35% of the then outstanding shares of our Common Stock (without giving effect to the exercise of any outstanding warrants to purchase our Common Stock), three directors; for so long as the applicable Nominating Stockholder beneficially owns at least 15%, but less than 35%, of the then outstanding shares of Common Stock (without giving effect to the exercise of any outstanding warrants to purchase our Common Stock), two directors; and for so long as the applicable Nominating Stockholder (or Nominating Stockholder's affiliate) beneficially owns at least 5%, but less than 15%, of the then outstanding shares of our Common Stock (without giving effect to the exercise of any outstanding warrants to purchase our Common Stock), one director. In the case of a vacancy on our Board of Directors created by the removal or resignation of an individual selected for nomination by a Nominating Stockholder (or Nominating Stockholder's affiliate), the Director Nomination Agreements require us to appoint another individual selected by the applicable Nominating Stockholder. The Director Nomination Agreements also provide for observation rights for each Nominating Stockholder (or Nominating Stockholder's Affiliate) to the extent that it has a right of nomination that it does not utilize.

In addition, the Director Nomination Agreements provide that for so long as a Nominating Stockholder continues to beneficially own at least 15% of the then outstanding shares of our Common Stock (without giving effect to the exercise of any outstanding warrants to purchase our Common Stock), we cannot, without the consent of such Nominating Stockholder, engage in certain related-party transactions, adopt an equity incentive plan or amend the same to increase the number of securities that may be granted thereunder, issue certain equity securities, including with a fair market value of more than $100 million, amend our certificate of incorporation or bylaws in a manner that adversely affects such Nominating Stockholder's rights under the applicable Director Nomination Agreement or has a disproportionate impact on the interests of such Nominating Stockholder, enter into certain new lines of business, or increase or decrease the size of the Board of Directors or change the classes in which the members of the Board of Directors serve. For additional information on ownership of each of the Nominating Stockholders, see section entitled "Ownership of Common Stock."

Directors and Officers Liability Insurance

We have purchased insurance from various insurance companies against obligations we might incur as a result of our indemnification obligations of directors and officers for certain liabilities they might incur and insuring such directors and officers for additional liabilities against which they might not be indemnified by us. We have also procured coverage for our own liabilities in certain circumstances. For the period from July 12, 2017 to July 12, 2018, we purchased a director and officer liability policy and a separate fiduciary liability policy. Our cost for the annual insurance premiums for these policies was $773,218 in the aggregate. For the period from July 12, 2018 to July 12, 2019, we purchased a director and officer liability policy and a separate fiduciary liability policy. Our cost for the annual insurance premiums for these policies was $757,970 in the aggregate.

Board Leadership Structure

Our Bylaws do not require that the positions of Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer be held by the same person or by different individuals, and our Board does not have a formal policy with respect to the separation or combination of these offices. Currently Mr. Chadha serves as the Chairman of the Board and Mr. Cogburn serves as our Chief Executive Officer.

Board Role in Risk Oversight

The Company faces a number of risks, including market risks, credit risk, liquidity risk, reputational risk, operational risk and risks from adverse fluctuations in interest rates and inflation and/or deflation. Management is responsible for the day-to-day management of risks faced by the Company, while the Board of Directors, as a whole and through its committees, has responsibility for the oversight of risk management. In its risk oversight role, the Board of Directors seeks to ensure that the risk management processes designed and implemented by management are adequate. The Board of Directors periodically consults with management regarding the Company's risks. In addition, the Audit Committee periodically reviews with management and independent auditors the adequacy and effectiveness of the Company's policies for assessing and managing risk.

DIRECTOR REMUNERATION

For 2018, certain members of our board of directors received a cash payment for services rendered in the 2018 calendar year. On December 19, 2017, our board of directors approved the director compensation policy, which remained unchanged for 2018 and has been ratified for 2019. Any non-employee director who is a representative of Apollo Management Holdings, L.P. or any of its subsidiaries (but excluding any portfolio companies of funds or accounts managed or advised thereby) is not eligible to receive any fees or equity awards pursuant to the director compensation policy. This compensation policy provides that each eligible non-employee director will receive the following compensation for service on our board of directors:

Director Compensation Policy	
	Annual Retainer ($)
Annual Cash Retainer for Board Membership	75,000
Annual Cash Retainer for Board Chairman	185,000
Audit Committee Member (other than the Chair)	20,000
Audit Committee Chair	30,000
Compensation Committee Member (other than the Chair)	12,500
Compensation Committee Chair	20,000
Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee	12,500
Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee Chair	20,000
Initial Equity Award (other than the Chair)(1)	150,000
Initial Equity Award Chair(1)	200,000
Annual Equity Award (Other than the Chair)(2)	110,000
Annual Equity Award Chair(2)	140,000

(1) Award delivered in the form of restricted stock units and vests ratably over a three-year period immediately prior to the first, second and third annual meetings subsequent to the date of grant.

(2) Award delivered in the form of restricted stock units and vests immediately prior to the first annual meeting subsequent to the date of grant.

Each of our eligible non-employee directors received the initial one-time equity award described above on April 2, 2018. Each of our eligible non-employee directors received an annual equity award (as described above) on April 2, 2018 and such award was granted in respect of service following the Business Combination through our 2018 annual meeting. Each of our eligible non-employee directors received an annual equity award (as described above) on August 14, 2018 and such award was granted in respect of service from our 2018 annual meeting to our 2019 annual meeting. Following our 2019 annual meeting, each of our eligible non-employee directors will receive an annual equity award (as described above) and such award will be granted in respect of service from our 2019 annual meeting to our 2020 annual meeting. The number of restricted stock units comprising each equity award was and will be determined by dividing the dollar amount of such award by the closing price of our Common Stock on the date of grant (rounded down to the nearest whole share).

With respect to 2018 and each year thereafter, for the audit committee, compensation committee, and nominating and corporate governance committee, if in any year such committee holds greater than four meetings, each member of the applicable committee (including the chairman of such committee) will receive $2,000 for each meeting following the first four meetings. In 2018, the only such committee that held greater than four meetings was our audit committee, which held eight meetings. Accordingly, for 2018 each member of the audit committee (including the chairman of the audit committee) is entitled to receive $8,000 for the additional four meetings.

Nathaniel Lipman, the chairman of our disclosure transition committee, received a one-time cash retainer of $20,000 for services provided in such capacity. The disclosure transition committee held two meetings in 2018 and was dissolved in March 2018. Other than the $20,000 retainer mentioned above, no compensation was paid with respect to any member's service on the disclosure transition committee.

We reimburse our directors for reasonable and necessary out-of-pocket expenses incurred in attending board and committee meetings or performing other services for us in their capacities as directors.

Director Compensation Table

The following table sets forth information concerning director compensation for services performed during the year ended December 31, 2018.

Name	Fees earned or paid in cash ($)	Stock Awards ($)(1)(2)	Total ($)
Par Chadha	197,500	480,000(3)	677,500
Joshua Black(4)	—	—	—
Gordon Coburn(5)	127,500	370,000(3)	497,500
Nathaniel Lipman	135,000	370,000(3)	505,000
Matthew Nord(4)	—	—	—
John Rexford	117,500	370,000(3)	487,500

(1) The amounts reported in this column represent the aggregate grant date fair value of the restricted stock units granted to the non-employee directors during the applicable fiscal year, calculated in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718, disregarding for this purpose the estimate of forfeitures related to service-based vesting conditions, and do not necessarily correspond to the actual value that might be realized by the non-employee directors, which depends on the market value of our Common Stock on a date in the future when the units are settled. Grants made during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, were restricted stock units subject to time-based vesting conditions. For such time-based vesting awards, the grant date fair value was calculated by multiplying the fair market value by the number of shares of our Common Stock subject to the restricted stock units on the grant date. For additional information, including a discussion of the assumptions used to calculate these values, please see note 14 to our consolidated financial statements included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018.

(2) Each restricted stock unit represents the right to receive, following vesting, one share of our Common Stock.

(3) The non-employee members of our board of director held the following aggregate unvested restricted stock units as of December 31, 2018.

Name	Aggregate Number of Restricted Stock Units Outstanding as of December 31, 2018
Par Chadha	52,367(A)
Gordon Coburn(5)	40,266(B)
Nathaniel Lipman	40,266(B)
John Rexford	40,266(B)

(A) Reflects (i) 24,645 restricted stock units, which vest in equal annual installments immediately prior to each of the 2019 and 2020 annual meetings of our stockholders, and (ii) 27,722 restricted stock units, which vest in full immediately prior to the 2019 annual meeting of our stockholders.

(B) Reflects (i) 18,484 restricted stock units, which vest in equal annual installments immediately prior to each of the 2019 and 2020 annual meetings of our stockholders, and (ii) 21,782 restricted stock units, which vest in full immediately prior to the 2019 annual meeting of our stockholders.

(4) Messrs. Nord and Black are the Apollo Management Holdings, L.P. representatives and therefore did not earn or receive any fees in respect of service on our board of directors during the 2018 calendar year.

(5) Mr. Coburn resigned from the Board of the Company, effective on February 21, 2019, and forfeited any then unvested restricted stock units held by him at such time.

Messrs. Cogburn and Reynolds each serve as members of the Board of the Company, however, neither executive officer receives additional compensation for such service.

Committees of the Board of Directors

The standing committees of the Board of Directors are the Audit Committee, the Compensation Committee, and the Nominating Committee. The charters of the Audit Committee, the Compensation Committee and the Nominating Committee are available on the Investors—Governance Overview section of our website at *www.exelatech.com*. These documents are also available upon written request to: Investor Relations, Exela Technologies, Inc., 2701 E. Grauwyler Road, Irving, Texas 75061. Information concerning these Committees is set out below.

Audit Committee

Members:	John H. Rexford (Chairman) and Nathaniel J. Lipman
Number of Meetings in 2018:	8

The Board of Directors has determined that all of the members of the Audit Committee meet the independence and experience requirements of the SEC and the Nasdaq. Moreover, the Board has determined that one of the Committee's members, Mr. Rexford, qualifies as an "audit committee financial expert" as defined by the SEC. As discussed above, Mr. Coburn has resigned and his seat on the Audit Committee remains vacant.

The Audit Committee's duties include, but are not limited to:

- reviewing and discussing with management and the independent auditor the annual audited financial statements, and recommend to the Board whether the audited financial statements should be included in our Form 10-K;
- reviewing and discussing with management and the independent auditor the quarterly financial statements prior to the filing of our Form 10-Qs, including the results of the independent auditor's review of the quarterly financial statements;
- discussing with management and the independent auditor significant financial reporting issues and judgments made in connection with the preparation of our financial statements;
- discussing with management major risk assessment and risk management policies;
- monitoring the independence of the independent auditor;
- verifying the rotation of the lead (or coordinating) audit partner having primary responsibility for the audit and the audit partner responsible for reviewing the audit as required by law;
- reviewing and approving all related-party transactions;
- inquiring and discussing with management our compliance with applicable laws and regulations;

- pre-approving all audit services and permitted non-audit services to be performed by our independent auditor, including the fees and terms of the services to be performed;
- appointing or replacing the independent auditor;
- determining the compensation and oversight of the work of the independent auditor (including resolution of disagreements between management and the independent auditor regarding financial reporting) for the purpose of preparing or issuing an audit report or related work;
- establishing procedures for the receipt, retention and treatment of complaints received by us regarding accounting, internal accounting controls or reports which raise material issues regarding our financial statements or accounting policies; and
- approving reimbursement of expenses incurred by our management team in identifying potential target businesses.

Compensation Committee

Members:	Nathaniel J. Lipman (Chairman) and John H. Rexford
Number of Meetings in 2018:	4

Our Compensation Committee has primary responsibility for overseeing our executive compensation program, including compensation of our named executive officers listed in the compensation tables that follow. Our Compensation Committee is composed of independent directors, as determined by Nasdaq listing standards. The Compensation Committee's responsibilities are set forth in its charter. As discussed above, Mr. Coburn has resigned and his seat as chair of the Compensation Committee remains vacant.

In order to fulfill its responsibilities pertaining to executive and director compensation, the Compensation Committee's duties include, but are not limited to:

- reviewing and approving on an annual basis the corporate goals and objectives relevant to our Chief Executive Officer's compensation, evaluating our Chief Executive Officer's performance in light of such goals and objectives and determining and approving the remuneration (if any) of our Chief Executive Officer based on such evaluation;
- reviewing and approving the compensation of all of our other executive officers;
- reviewing our executive compensation policies and plans;
- implementing and administering our incentive compensation equity-based remuneration plans;
- assisting management in complying with our proxy statement and annual report disclosure requirements;
- approving all special perquisites, special cash payments and other special compensation and benefit arrangements for our executive officers and employees;
- if required, producing a report on executive compensation to be included in our annual proxy statement; and
- reviewing, evaluating and recommending changes, if appropriate, to the remuneration for directors.

Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation

Nathaniel J. Lipman and John H. Rexford served as members of the Compensation Committee during 2018. No member of the Compensation Committee is a present or former officer of, or employed by, the Company or its subsidiaries. None of our executive officers serves as a member of the board of directors or compensation committee of any other entity the executive officers of which entity serve on either the Company's Board of Directors or Compensation Committee.

Nominating Committee

Members:	Par Chadha and Matthew H. Nord
Number of Meetings in 2018:	2

The Nominating Committee is responsible for overseeing the selection of persons to be nominated to serve on our Board of Directors. As discussed above, Mr. Coburn has resigned and his seat on the Nominating Committee remains vacant.

The nominating committee considers persons identified by its members, management, stockholders, investment bankers and others.

Guidelines for selecting director nominees

The guidelines for selecting nominees generally provide that the persons to be nominated:

- should have demonstrated notable or significant achievements in business, education or public service;
- should possess the requisite intelligence, education and experience to make a significant contribution to the board of directors and bring a range of skills, diverse perspectives and backgrounds to its deliberations; and
- should have the highest ethical standards, a strong sense of professionalism and intense dedication to serving the interests of the stockholders.

The nominating committee will consider a number of qualifications relating to management and leadership experience, background and integrity and professionalism in evaluating a person's candidacy for membership on the board of directors. The nominating committee may require certain skills or attributes, such as financial or accounting experience, to meet specific Board needs that arise from time to time and will also consider the overall experience and makeup of its members to obtain a broad and diverse mix of directors. The nominating committee does not distinguish among nominees recommended by stockholders and other persons. The Company is subject to the terms of the Director Nomination Agreements. See the section entitled "*Proposal No. 1—Election of Directors—Director Nomination Agreements*."

A stockholder who has held at least one percent of the fully diluted capitalization of the Company continuously for at least 12 months that wants to recommend a candidate for election to the Board should direct the recommendation in writing by letter to the Company, attention: Corporate Secretary, 2701 E. Grauwyler Rd., Irving, Texas 75061. The recommendation must include the candidate's name, home and business contact information, detailed biographical data, relevant qualifications, a signed letter from the candidate confirming willingness to serve, information regarding any relationships between the candidate and the Company and evidence of the recommending stockholder's ownership of Company stock. Such recommendations must also include a statement from the recommending stockholder in support of the candidate, particularly within the context of the criteria for Board membership, including issues of character, integrity, judgment, diversity of experience, independence, area of expertise, corporate experience, length of service, potential conflicts of interest, other commitments and the like and personal references.

PROPOSAL 2—RATIFICATION OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

Stockholders will act upon a proposal to ratify the selection of KPMG LLP ("KPMG") as the independent registered public accounting firm of the Company. **If the stockholders, by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the voting power of the shares represented in person or by proxy at the Annual Meeting and entitled to vote on this proposal, do not ratify the selection of KPMG, the selection of the independent registered public accounting firm will be reconsidered by the Audit Committee.**

Background

The Audit Committee has selected KPMG as the independent registered public accounting firm of the Company for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2019. KPMG has advised the Company that it has no direct or indirect financial interest in the Company or any of its subsidiaries and that it has had, during the last three years, no connection with the Company or any of its subsidiaries other than as our independent registered public accounting firm and certain other activities as described below.

Pursuant to its charter, the Audit Committee is directly responsible for the appointment, retention, compensation and oversight of the Company's independent registered public accounting firm. In addition to assuring the regular rotation of the lead audit partner as required by law, the Audit Committee is involved in the evaluation and selection of the lead audit partner and considers whether there should be regular rotation of the independent registered public accounting firm.

The Audit Committee is also required to review and pre-approve all of the audit and non-audit services to be performed by the Company's independent registered public accounting firm, including the firm's engagement letter for the annual audit of the Company, the proposed fees in connection with such audit services, and any additional services that management chooses to hire the independent auditors to perform. Additionally, the Audit Committee can establish pre-approval policies and procedures with respect to the engagement of the Company's independent accountant's for non-audit services. In accordance with the Audit Committee Charter, all of the foregoing audit and non-audit fees paid to, and the related service provided by, KPMG were pre-approved by the Audit Committee.

Change in Independent Registered Public Accountant Firm

As previously disclosed, on August 9, 2017, Marcum LLP ("Marcum"), was dismissed as our independent registered public accounting firm. Effective August 10, 2017, KPMG was engaged as our new independent registered public accounting firm. The Audit Committee of the Board of Directors of the Company approved the dismissal of Marcum and approved the engagement of KPMG as our independent registered public accounting firm. The dismissal of Marcum and appointment of KPMG was done in connection with the closing of the Business Combination, as was previously disclosed in our Current Reports on Form 8-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 18, 2017 and August 10, 2017.

For the fiscal years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, Marcum's audit report on the Company's financial statements did not contain an adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion, nor was it qualified as to audit scope or accounting principles. During the fiscal years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 and the subsequent interim period preceding Marcum's dismissal, (i) there were no "disagreements" (as described in Item 304(a)(1)(iv) of Regulation S-K and the related instructions) between the Company and Marcum on any matter of accounting principles or practices, financial statement disclosure or auditing scope or procedures, which disagreements, if not resolved to Marcum's satisfaction, would have caused Marcum to make reference in connection with Marcum's opinion to the subject matter of the disagreement; and (ii) there were no "reportable events" as the term is described in Item 304(a)(1)(v) of Regulation S-K.

The Company previously provided Marcum with a copy of the disclosures regarding the dismissal reproduced in this Proxy and received a letter from Marcum addressed to the SEC stating that they agree with the above statements. This letter was filed as an exhibit to our Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on August 10, 2017.

During the two most recent fiscal years and the interim periods preceding the engagement, and through the date of KPMG's engagement, neither the Company nor anyone on its behalf previously consulted with KPMG regarding either (a) the application of accounting principles to a specified transaction, either completed or proposed; or the type of audit opinion that might be rendered on the Company's financial statements, and neither a written report was provided nor oral advice was provided to the Company that KPMG concluded was an important factor considered by the Company in reaching a decision as to the accounting, auditing or financial reporting issue; or (b) any matter that was either the subject of a disagreement (as defined in paragraph 304(a)(1)(iv) of Regulation S-K and the related instructions thereto) or a reportable event (as described in paragraph 304(a)(1)(v) of Regulation S-K).

Financial Statements and Reports

The financial statements of the Company for the year ended December 31, 2018 and the reports of the independent registered public accounting firm will be presented at the Annual Meeting. KPMG will have a representative present at the meeting who will have an opportunity to make a statement if he or she so desires and to respond to appropriate questions from stockholders.

Services

From and after July 12, 2017, the closing of the Business Combination, KPMG and its affiliates provided services consisting of the audit of the annual consolidated financial statements and internal controls over financial reporting of the Company, review of the quarterly financial statements of the Company, accounting consultations and consents and other services related to SEC filings by the Company and its subsidiaries and other pertinent matters and other permitted services to the Company. From January 1, 2016 to July 12, 2017, KPMG provided accounting services to SourceHOV, our accounting acquirer.

Audit Fees

The aggregate fees billed or expected to be billed by KPMG for professional services rendered for the audit of the Company's annual consolidated financial statements and internal controls over financial reporting for the fiscal years ended 2017 and 2018, for the reviews of the condensed consolidated financial statements included in the Company's Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q for the 2017 and 2018 fiscal years and for accounting research and consultation related to the audits and reviews totaled approximately $3.3 million for 2017 and $6.8 million for 2018. These fees were pre-approved by the Audit Committee.

Audit-Related Fees

The aggregate fees billed by KPMG for audit-related services for the fiscal years ended 2017 and 2018 were $1.1 million and $0.2 million, respectively. These fees related to research and consultation on various filings with the SEC and due diligence services and were pre-approved by the Audit Committee.

Tax Fees

The aggregate fees billed by KPMG for tax services were less than $0.1 million for each of the fiscal years ended 2017 and 2018, respectively. These fees related to local tax compliance were pre-approved by the Audit Committee.

All Other Fees

There were no fees billed by KPMG for services rendered to the Company other than the services described above under "Audit Fees," "Audit-Related Fees" and "Tax Fees" for the fiscal years ended 2017 and 2018.

In its approval of these non-audit services, the Audit Committee has considered whether the provision of non-audit services is compatible with maintaining KPMG's independence.

THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS UNANIMOUSLY RECOMMENDS THAT STOCKHOLDERS VOTE THEIR SHARES FOR THE PROPOSAL TO RATIFY THE SELECTION OF KPMG LLP AS THE INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM OF THE COMPANY FOR THE YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 2019.

REPORT OF THE AUDIT COMMITTEE

The Audit Committee currently consists of two independent directors, both of whom have been determined by the Board to meet the heightened independence criteria applicable to Audit Committee members and to satisfy the financial literacy requirements of the Nasdaq Listing Rules and the applicable rules of the SEC. As discussed above, Mr. Coburn has resigned and his seat on the Audit Committee remains vacant. The Audit Committee is responsible, under its charter, for oversight of our independent registered public accounting firm, which reports directly to the Audit Committee. The Audit Committee has the authority to retain and terminate the independent registered public accounting firm, to review the scope and terms of the audit and to approve the fees to be charged. The Audit Committee monitors our system of internal control over financial reporting and management's certifications as to disclosure controls and procedures and internal controls for financial reporting. Our management and independent registered public accounting firm, not the Audit Committee, are responsible for the planning and conduct of the audit of our consolidated financial statements and determining that the consolidated financial statements are complete and accurate and prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

The Audit Committee has met and held discussions with management and our independent registered public accounting firm (with and without management) and has reviewed and discussed the audited consolidated financial statements and related internal control over financial reporting with management and our independent registered public accounting firm.

The Audit Committee has also discussed with our independent registered public accounting firm the matters required to be discussed by Auditing Standard No. 1301, Communications with Audit Committees issued by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) ("PCAOB").

Our independent registered public accounting firm also provided the Audit Committee with the written disclosures and the letter required by the applicable requirements of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board regarding the independent registered public accounting firm's communications with the Audit Committee concerning independence, and the Audit Committee discussed with our independent registered public accounting firm that firm's independence.

Based upon the review and discussions referred to above, the Audit Committee recommended to the Board of Directors that the audited consolidated financial statements be included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 for filing with the SEC. The Audit Committee selected KPMG LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2019, which is being presented to stockholders at the Annual Meeting for ratification.

The Audit Committee

Nathaniel J. Lipman

John H. Rexford (Chairman)

PROPOSAL 3—ADVISORY VOTE ON COMPENSATION PAID TO OUR NAMED EXECUTIVE OFFICERS

As required by Rule 14a-21(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Securities Exchange Act"), we are seeking an advisory vote on the compensation of the Company's named executive officers as disclosed in the section of this Proxy Statement titled "Executive Compensation," including the compensation tables and narrative discussion that follows the tables. After careful consideration, the Board of Directors determined that holding an annual advisory vote on compensation paid to our named executive officers is the most appropriate policy for the Company, and at last year's annual meeting stockholders voted in favor of the Company holding annual advisory votes on such compensation.

Our compensation program for our named executive officers is designed to (i) retain our named executive officers, who are critical to our long-term success; and (ii) motivate and reward them for achieving our short-term business and long-term strategic goals. We believe that in 2018 our executive compensation program was successful in implementing these objectives.

Stockholders are urged to read the compensation tables and narrative discussion in this Proxy Statement. The Board believes that the compensation paid to our named executive officers is necessary, appropriate and properly aligned with our compensation philosophy and policies.

Stockholders are being asked to approve the following advisory resolution:

RESOLVED, that the compensation paid to the Company's named executive officers, as disclosed in the Proxy Statement pursuant to Item 402 of Regulation S-K, including the compensation tables and narrative discussion, is hereby APPROVED.

Although the vote is non-binding, the Board of Directors and the Compensation Committee will consider the voting results, along with other relevant factors, in connection with their ongoing evaluation of the Company's compensation programs.

THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS UNANIMOUSLY RECOMMENDS THAT STOCKHOLDERS VOTE THEIR SHARES, ON A NON-BINDING, ADVISORY BASIS, FOR THE PROPOSAL TO APPROVE THE COMPANY'S COMPENSATION OF ITS NAMED EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AS DESCRIBED IN THIS PROXY STATEMENT.

EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

This section discusses the material components of the executive compensation program for Exela's executive officers who are named in the "Summary Compensation Table" below. As a "smaller reporting company" as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act, Exela is not required to include a Compensation Discussion and Analysis and has elected to comply with the scaled disclosure requirements applicable to smaller reporting companies. Exela's named executive officers for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 were as follows:

- Ronald C. Cogburn, our Chief Executive Officer;
- James G. Reynolds, our Chief Financial Officer; and
- Suresh Yannamani, our President.

Summary Compensation Table

The following table sets forth compensation information for our named executive officers for services performed for the Company and its subsidiaries for the fiscal years ended December 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

Name and principal position	Year	Salary ($)	Bonus ($)(1)	Stock Awards ($)(2)	Option Awards ($)(3)	Total ($)
Ronald C. Cogburn	2018	325,000	350,000(1)	442,520	298,146	1,415,666
Chief Executive Officer	2017	325,000	—	—	—	325,000
James G. Reynolds	2018	325,000	—	442,520	298,146	1,065,666
Chief Financial Officer	2017	186,096(4)	—	—	—	186,096
Suresh Yannamani	2018	325,000	450,000(1)	442,520	298,146	1,515,666
President	2017	325,000	—	—	—	325,000

(1) The amount reported in this column represent the portion of the cash transaction bonus paid to each of Messrs. Cogburn and Yannamani in partial consideration for each executive's efforts in connection with the Business Combination, which was paid in 2018.

(2) The amounts reported in this column represent the aggregate grant date fair value of the restricted stock units granted to the named executive officers during the applicable fiscal year, calculated in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718, disregarding for this purpose the estimate of forfeitures related to service-based vesting conditions, and do not necessarily correspond to the actual value that might be realized by the named executive officers, which depends on the market value of our Common Stock on a date in the future when the units are settled. Grants made during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, were restricted stock units subject to time-based vesting conditions. For such time-based vesting awards, the grant date fair value was calculated by multiplying the fair market value by the number of shares of our Common Stock subject to the restricted stock units on the grant date. For additional information, including a discussion of the assumptions used to calculate these values, please see the "—Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year End Table" below and note 14 to our consolidated financial statements included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018.

(3) The amounts reported in this column represent the aggregate grant date fair value of stock options granted to the named executive officers during the applicable fiscal year, calculated in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718, disregarding for this purpose the estimate of forfeitures related to

service-based vesting conditions, and do not necessarily correspond to the actual value that might be realized by the named executive officers, which depends on the market value of our Common Stock on a date in the future when the stock options are exercised. Grants made during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, were stock options subject to time-based vesting conditions. For such time-based vesting awards, the grant date fair value was calculated by multiplying the Black-Scholes value by the number of shares of our Common Stock subject to the stock options. For additional information, including a discussion of the assumptions used to calculate these values, please see the "—Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year End Table" below and note 14 to our consolidated financial statements included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018.

(4) On January 25, 2018, our compensation committee approved a base salary for Mr. Reynolds equal to $325,000, with retroactive effect as of the consummation of the Business Combination, or July 12, 2017. The amounts reported in this column for Mr. Reynolds reflect the base salary earned by him with respect to service as our Chief Financial Officer following the Business Combination during 2017, which was paid to him in the form of a catch-up payment in 2018.

Narrative to Summary Compensation Table and Grant of Plan-Based Awards Table

No Executive Employment Agreements

We have not entered into employment agreements with Messrs. Cogburn, Reynolds or Yannamani. For a discussion of the severance pay and other benefits to be provided to our named executive officers in connection with a termination of employment and/or a change in control, please see "—*Potential Payments Upon Termination or Change In Control*" below.

Short and Long Term Incentives

With respect to our 2018 fiscal year, the compensation committee considered the Company's performance against various key indicators, such as revenue, EBITDA (Earnings Before Interest, Taxes, Depreciation, and Amortization) levels and margin and cost savings initiatives and determined that we did not achieve our objectives. Accordingly, no bonuses were paid to our named executive officers with respect to our 2018 fiscal year. The compensation committee approved grants of restricted stock units and stock options made to our named executive officers in August 2018 pursuant to our 2018 Plan (described below). Restricted stock units and stock options granted to our named executive officers vest over 4 years and one year, respectively, subject to the executive's continued employment with us or one of subsidiaries through such date. For additional information regarding such grants, please see "—Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year End Table" below.

Transaction Bonuses

Each of Messrs. Cogburn and Yannamani received a cash transaction bonus in partial consideration for their efforts in connection with the Business Combination. Receipt of the transaction bonus payments by each of Messrs. Cogburn and Yannamani was contingent on the applicable executive remaining continuously employed by the Company or its subsidiaries through the applicable payment date. The table below details the transaction bonuses paid to our named executive officers.

Executive	Transaction Bonus
Ronald C. Cogburn	$ 350,000(1)
Suresh Yannamani	$ 450,000(2)

(1) Mr. Cogburn's transaction bonus was paid in $50,000 increments on each of January 5, 2018, January 19, 2018, February 2, 2018, February 16, 2018, March 2, 2018, March 16, 2018 and March 30, 2018.

(2) Mr. Yannamani's transaction bonus was paid in approximately $75,000 increments on each of January 12, 2018, January 26, 2018, February 9, 2018, February 23, 2018, March 9, 2018 and March 23, 2018.

Stock Plans, Health and Welfare Plans, and Retirement Plans

2018 Stock Incentive Plan.

On December 19, 2017, our board of directors adopted our 2018 Stock Incentive Plan, or the "2018 Plan," which was subsequently approved on December 20, 2017 by the written consent of the holders of a majority of the shares of our Common Stock, and became effective on January 17, 2018. The 2018 Plan is administered by the compensation committee of our board of directors. Under the 2018 Plan, the compensation committee may grant an aggregate of 8,323,764 shares of our Common Stock to eligible participants in the form of stock options, restricted stock awards, restricted stock units, stock appreciation rights, performance awards and other awards that may be settled in or based on our Common Stock.

SourceHOV Long Term Incentive Plan

Prior to the Business Combination, our subsidiary, SourceHOV, maintained the 2013 Long Term Incentive Plan, or the "2013 Plan." Certain of our named executive officers were granted restricted stock units pursuant to the 2013 Plan. In connection with the Business Combination, the 2013 Plan was assigned to, and assumed by, Ex-Sigma LLC, or Ex-Sigma, and all awards outstanding under the 2013 Plan were transferred to, and assumed by, Ex-Sigma. Upon such assumption, each restricted stock unit granted pursuant to the 2013 Plan was converted into the right to receive a membership interest of Ex-Sigma, subject to the applicable vesting terms, which require, among other things, continued employment with us through the applicable vesting date. For a summary of the vesting terms applicable to the restricted stock units granted to our named executive officers, see "—Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year End" below.

Ex-Sigma is a limited liability company that was formed to facilitate the raising of the funds necessary to consummate the Business Combination and is owned by the former equity holders of SourceHOV. Ex-Sigma, through its wholly-owned subsidiary Ex Sigma 2, LLC ("Ex Sigma 2"), owns 77,912,500 shares of our Common Stock and 2,669,233 shares of our preferred stock (which presently are convertible into 3,263,473 shares of Common Stock). Those shares are pledged to secure certain financing incurred in connection with the Business Combination. Upon the repayment of such financing, it is anticipated that Ex-Sigma will distribute the shares of our preferred stock and Common Stock that it then owns to its members (including holders of restricted stock units) based on each member's proportionate ownership interest of Ex-Sigma at such time.

Health and Welfare Plans.

Our named executive officers are eligible to participate in our employee benefits plans, including our medical, dental, vision, life, disability, health and dependent care flexible spending accounts and accidental death and dismemberment benefit plans, in each case on the same basis as all of our other employees.

Retirement Plan.

We sponsor a retirement plan intended to qualify for favorable tax treatment under Section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the "Code," containing a cash or deferred feature that is intended to meet the requirements of Section 401(k) of the Code. Employees who meet the eligibility requirements may make pre-tax contributions to the plan from their eligible earnings up to the statutorily prescribed annual limit on pre-tax contributions under the Code. Participants who are 50 years of age or older may contribute additional amounts based on the statutory limits for catch-up contributions. All employee and employer contributions are allocated to each participant's individual account and are then invested in selected investment alternatives according to the participant's directions. Pre-tax contributions by participants and contributions that we may make to the plan and the income earned on those contributions are generally not taxable to participants until withdrawn, and all contributions are generally deductible by us when made. Participant contributions are held in trust as required by law. No minimum benefit is provided under the plan. An employee is 100% vested in his or her pre-tax deferrals when contributed and any employer contributions vest ratably over four years. The plan provides for a discretionary employer matching contribution, however, we currently do not make any matching contributions to the plan and did not make any matching contributions with respect to the 2018 plan year.

Other Compensation Policies and Practices

Insider Trading Policy

Our Insider Trading Policy provides that employees, including our executive officers and the members of our board of directors, are prohibited from engaging in transactions in our securities if such employee possesses material, non-public information about the Company. In addition, certain persons covered by our Insider Trading Policy must advise our General Counsel before effectuating any transaction in our securities.

Stock Ownership Guidelines

On December 19, 2017, our board of directors adopted Stock Ownership Guidelines for our non-employee directors, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer and our other executive officers who report directly to our Chief Executive Officer, which we refer to here as covered persons. Our Stock Ownership Guidelines provide that within five years after first becoming subject to the guidelines (which for our named executive officers and non-employee directors occurred on December 19, 2017), each covered person should own shares of our Common Stock with a specified fair market value, which is three times annual retainer fee in the case of non-employee directors, six times annual base salary in the case of our Chief Executive Officer, three times annual base salary in the case of our Chief Financial Officer and one and one-half times annual base salary in the case of all other covered persons. Covered persons must retain their equity until their required ownership amount is met; provided, that each covered person is at all times permitted to sell a portion of the shares of our Common Stock underlying his or her equity based awards to the extent necessary to satisfy any withholding taxes due in connection with such awards. Included in a covered person's ownership amount for purposes of the Stock Ownership Guidelines are: (i) shares of our Common Stock owned by Apollo Novitex Holdings, L.P. and its affiliates for any non-employee director nominated by Apollo Novitex Holdings, L.P. pursuant to the applicable director nomination agreement; (ii) one half of the fair market value of the shares of our Common Stock underlying vested stock options (to the extent the fair market value exceeds the applicable exercise price); (iii) one half of the shares of our Common Stock subject to all vested and deferred restricted stock units; and (iv) to the extent a covered person is a member of Ex-Sigma, a proportionate share of the shares of our Common Stock that are owned by Ex-Sigma. Shares of our Common Stock underlying unvested equity awards are not counted towards determining a covered person's stock ownership.

Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year End

The following table contains information regarding outstanding equity awards of Exela and Ex-Sigma held by our named executive officers as of December 31, 2018.

	Option Awards				Stock Awards	
Name	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options (#) Exercisable	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options (#) Unexercisable	Option Exercise Price ($)	Option Expiration Date	Number of Shares or Units of Stock That Have Not Vested (#)	Market Value of Shares or Units of Stock That Have Not Vested ($)(5)
Ronald C. Cogburn	—	111,000(1)	5.98	8/31/28	—	—
Ronald C. Cogburn	—	—	—	—	74,000(2)	287,860
Ronald C. Cogburn	—	—	—	—	238(3)(6)	291,550
Ronald C. Cogburn	—	—	—	—	50(4)(6)	61,250
James G. Reynolds	—	111,000(1)	$5.98	8/31/28	—	—
James G. Reynolds	—	—	—	—	74,000(2)	287,860
Suresh Yannamani	—	111,000(1)	$5.98	8/31/28	—	—
Suresh Yannamani	—	—	—	—	74,000(2)	287,860
Suresh Yannamani	—	—	—	—	13(3)(6)	15,925
Suresh Yannamani	—	—	—	—	50(4)(6)	61,250

(1) The stock options are subject to the following vesting schedule: forty percent of the options will vest and become exercisable on August 31, 2020 and the remainder will vest and become exercisable on August 31, 2022, subject to continued employment with us through each such date.

(2) The restricted stock units represent the right to receive, following vesting, one share of Common Stock, and vest in full on August 31, 2019, subject to continued employment with us through such date.

(3) The restricted units are subject to the following vesting schedule: one-fourth of the restricted stock units vest on each of the first four anniversaries of the vesting commencement date, or April 30, 2015, subject to continued employment with us through such date. In addition, if the grantee's employment is terminated without cause (other than as a result of death or disability) following the occurrence of a change in control of Ex-Sigma, all unvested restricted stock units will immediately vest.

(4) The restricted stock units are subject to the following vesting schedule: one-third of the restricted stock units vest on each of the first three anniversaries of the vesting commencement date, or April 29, 2016, subject to continued employment with us through such date. In addition, if the grantee's employment is terminated without cause (other than as a result of death or disability) following the occurrence of a change in control of Ex-Sigma, all unvested restricted stock units will immediately vest.

(5) The amounts disclosed in this column represent the value of the membership interests or shares of Common Stock, as applicable, underlying each restricted stock unit that had not vested as of

December 31, 2018. With respect to the Ex-Sigma restricted stock units, the value is based on each member's (including each holder of restricted stock units) proportionate ownership of Ex-Sigma at such time and the closing price of our Common Stock on December 31, 2018, or $3.89, which was the final day in the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 on which our Common Stock was traded. With respect to the Exela restricted stock units, the market value was determined based on the closing price of our Common Stock on December 31, 2018, or $3.89.

(6) Stock awards represent restricted stock units in Ex-Sigma. Ex-Sigma, through its wholly-owned subsidiary Ex Sigma 2, owns 77,912,500 shares of our Common Stock and 2,669,233 shares of our preferred stock (which presently are convertible into 3,263,473 shares of Common Stock). Those shares are pledged to secure certain financing incurred in connection with the Business Combination. Upon the repayment of such financing, it is anticipated that Ex-Sigma will distribute the shares of our preferred stock and Common Stock that it then owns to its members (including holders of restricted stock units) based on each member's proportionate ownership interest of Ex-Sigma at such time.

(7) The table below shows the aggregate number of vested Ex-Sigma restricted stock units held by each named executive officer as of December 31, 2018.

Name	Aggregate RSUs Vested and Deferred as of December 31, 2018
Ronald C. Cogburn	2,169
Suresh Yannamani	1,494

Potential Payments Upon Termination or Change in Control

The following summaries describe the potential payments and benefits that we would provide to our named executive officers in connection with a termination of employment and/or a change in control.

Severance Benefits

Although we have not entered into written agreements providing Messrs. Cogburn, Reynolds or Yannamani severance benefits, upon a termination of Messrs. Cogburn's, Reynolds' or Yannamani's employment by us without cause, each of Messrs. Cogburn, Reynolds and Yannamani would be eligible for severance benefits pursuant to our current severance policy equal to continued payment of his base salary for a period of three weeks for each year of service, up to a maximum of 16 weeks. Our severance policy may be amended or terminated at any time in our sole discretion.

Vesting and Settlement of Outstanding Equity Awards

Each of Messrs. Cogburn and Yannamani hold restricted stock units, which represent the right to receive membership interests in Ex-Sigma. Ex-Sigma, through its wholly-owned subsidiary Ex Sigma 2, owns 77,912,500 shares of our Common Stock and 2,669,233 shares of our preferred stock (which presently are convertible into 3,263,473 shares of Common Stock). Those shares are pledged to secure certain financing incurred in connection with the Business Combination. Upon the repayment of such financing, it is anticipated that Ex-Sigma will distribute the shares of our preferred stock and Common Stock that it then owns to its members (including holders of restricted stock units) based on each member's proportionate ownership interest of Ex-Sigma at such time.

The vesting and settlement of each of Messrs. Cogburn's and Yannamani's Ex-Sigma restricted stock units will be accelerated in certain instances upon or following a change in control of Ex-Sigma. All of the Ex-Sigma restricted stock units granted to each of Messrs. Cogburn and Yannamani on April 30, 2015 and on April 29, 2016 that are unvested as of a change in control of Ex-Sigma, will vest immediately if, following the occurrence of such change in control, the grantee's employment with us

and our subsidiaries is terminated without cause (other than as a result of death or disability). In addition, such restricted stock units will be settled on the earlier of (i) the occurrence of a change in control of Ex-Sigma, and (ii) the fifth anniversary of the date of grant; provided, that, following a change in control of Ex-Sigma, each restricted stock unit that is not vested as of the date of such change in control will be settled on the earlier to occur of (i) the date on which such restricted stock unit vests (disregarding any accelerated vesting on account of a termination without cause), and (ii) if the grantee's employment is terminated without cause (other than as a result of the grantee's death or disability) within two years following the occurrence of such change in control of Ex-Sigma, the date of such termination.

Our named executive officers also hold unvested stock options and restricted stock units granted pursuant to our 2018 Plan. The 2018 Plan provides that in the event of a significant "corporate event," as defined therein, each outstanding award will be treated as the administrator determines. In addition, unless otherwise provided in an award agreement, with respect to each outstanding equity award under the 2018 Plan that is assumed or substituted in connection with a change in control, the vesting, payment, purchase or distribution of such award may not be accelerated by reason of the change in control for any award holder unless the award holder experiences an involuntary termination as a result of the change in control. For these purposes, an award holder will be deemed to experience an involuntary termination as a result of a change in control if the awardholder experiences a termination other than for cause, or otherwise experiences a termination under circumstances which entitle the award holder to mandatory severance payment(s) pursuant to applicable law.

OWNERSHIP OF COMMON STOCK

Principal Holders of Common Stock

The following table shows, based upon filings made with the Company, certain information as of April 29, 2019 concerning persons who may be deemed beneficial owners of 5% or more of the outstanding shares of Common Stock because they possessed or shared voting or investment power with respect to the shares of Common Stock.

Name and Address	Amount and Nature of Beneficial Ownership	Percent of Class(1)
Various entities affiliated with Ex-Sigma 2 LLC(2) 8550 West Desert Inn Road, Suite 102-452, Las Vegas, NV 89117	82,472,473(3)	52.9%
Various entities affiliated with Apollo Novitex Holdings, L.P.(4) 9 West 57th Street, 43rd Floor, New York, NY 10019	28,647,136	18.4%
Nantahala Capital Management, LLC(5) 19 Old Kings Highway S, Suite 200 Darien, Connecticut 06820	8,401,832	5.4%
Greenlight Capital, Inc.(6) 140 East 45th Street, 24th Floor, New York, New York 10017	8,384,629	5.4%

(1) Percent of class refers to percentage of class beneficially owned as the term beneficial ownership is defined in Rule 13d-3 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and is based upon 152,692,140 shares of Common Stock issued and 150,142,955 shares of Common Stock outstanding, 5,586,344 shares of Common Stock issuable upon conversion of the Series A Preferred Stock, as of April 29, 2019, and 102,093 RSUs that are scheduled to vest immediately prior to our Annual Meeting.

(2) Information based on Amendment Number 2 to Schedule 13D, filed with the SEC on June 20, 2018, by HOVS LLC, HandsOn Fund 4 I LLC, HOV Capital III LLC, HOV Services Ltd., Adesi 234 LLC, HOF 2 LLC, Ex-Sigma 2 LLC, Ex-Sigma LLC, HandsOn Global Management LLC, and Par Chadha (collectively, the "HGM Reporting Persons") and includes 1,250,000 shares of Common Stock held directly by HandsOn Global Management LLC. According to the Schedule 13D, Mr. Chadha may be deemed to be the beneficial owner of, and he has shared power to vote and dispose of, the aggregate 82,425,973 shares of Common Stock held by the HGM Reporting Persons.

(3) Share totals and ownership percentage include 3,263,473 shares of Common Stock issuable upon the conversion of 2,669,233 shares of Series A Preferred Stock. Ex-Sigma 2 LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("Ex-Sigma 2"), directly owns 77,912,500 shares of Common Stock and 2,669,233 shares of Series A Convertible Preferred Stock, which may be converted into 3,263,473 shares of Common Stock. Ex-Sigma LLC ("Ex-Sigma") is the sole equity holder of Ex-Sigma 2. HOVS LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("HOVS"), HandsOnFund 4 I LLC, a Nevada limited liability company ("HOF 4"), HOV Capital III, LLC, a Nevada limited liability company ("HOV 3"), each directly own interests in Ex-Sigma. HOVS is a wholly-owned subsidiary of HOV Services Ltd., an Indian limited company ("HOV Services"). Adesi 234 LLC, a Nevada limited liability company ("Adesi"), and HOF 2 LLC, a Nevada limited liability company ("HOF 2"), together own a majority of the equity interests of HOV 3. HandsOn Global Management, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("HGM"), owns 1,250,000 shares of Common Stock. HandsOn3, LLC, an affiliate of HGM directly owns 46,500 shares of Common Stock. Mr. Par Chadha may be deemed to control HGM , Ex-Sigma 2, Ex-Sigma, HOVS, HOF 4, HOF 3, HOV 3, Adesi, and HOF 2 LLC and each may be deemed to share beneficial ownership of the shares of Common Stock. In connection with the Business Combination, HOVS, HOF 4 and certain of their affiliates entered into a Director Nomination Agreement with the Company pursuant to which HOVS, HOF 4 and certain of their affiliates are entitled to nominate a certain number of directors to the board of the Company based on ownership thresholds in the Company. Mr. Par Chadha is currently Chairman of the board of the Company. The principal business address of Ex-Sigma 2 and HGM is 8550 West Desert Inn Road, Suite 102-452, Las Vegas, NV 89117.

(4) Information based on Amendment Number 2 to Schedule 13D (the "13D"), filed with the SEC on April 11, 2018, relating to securities held of record by Apollo Novitex Holdings, L.P., a Delaware limited partnership ("Novitex Holdings"). Novitex Parent GP, LLC ("Novitex GP") is the general partner of Novitex Holdings. Apollo Management VII, L.P. ("Management VII") is the manager of Novitex GP, and AIF VII Management, LLC ("AIF VII LLC") is the general partner of Management VII. Apollo Management, L.P. ("Apollo Management") is the sole member-manager of AIF VII LLC, and Apollo Management GP, LLC ("Apollo Management GP") is the general partner of Apollo Management. Apollo Management Holdings, L.P. ("Management Holdings") is the sole member-manager of Apollo Management GP, and Apollo Management Holdings GP, LLC ("Management Holdings GP") is the general partner of Management Holdings. Leon Black, Joshua Harris and Marc Rowan are the managers, as well as executive officers, of Apollo Management Holdings GP and as such may be deemed to have voting and dispositive control of the shares of Common Stock held by Novitex Holdings. The address of each of Novitex Holdings, Novitex GP, Management VII, AIF VII LLC, Apollo Management, Apollo Management GP, Management Holdings and Management Holdings GP, and Messrs. Black, Harris and Rowan is 9 West 57th Street, 43rd Floor, New York, New York.

(5) Information based on Schedule 13G, filed with the SEC on February 14, 2019 by Nantahala Capital Management, LLC, a Massachusetts limited liability company, Wilmot B. Harkey and Daniel Mack.

(6) Information based on Schedule 13G/A, filed with the SEC on February 14, 2019, by Greenlight Capital, Inc., a Delaware corporation ("Greenlight Inc."), DME Advisors, LP, a Delaware limited partnership ("DME Advisors"), DME Capital Management, LP, a Delaware limited partnership ("DME CM"), DME Advisors GP, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("DME GP" and together with Greenlight Inc., DME Advisors and DME CM, "Greenlight"), and Mr. David Einhorn, the principal of Greenlight (collectively with Greenlight, the "Greenlight Reporting Persons"). Pursuant to Rule 13d-4, each of the Greenlight Reporting Persons disclaims all such beneficial ownership except to the extent of its pecuniary interest in any shares of Common Stock, if applicable.

Common Stock Ownership by Directors and Executive Officers

The following table presents the number of shares of Common Stock beneficially owned by the directors, the nominees for director, the named executive officers and all directors, nominees for director and named executive officers as a group as of April 29, 2019. Individuals have sole voting and dispositive power over the stock unless otherwise indicated in the footnotes.

Name of Individual	Amount and Nature of Beneficial Ownership	Percent of Class(1)
Par Chadha(2)	82,550,718	53.0%
Ronald Cogburn(3)	—	*
James G. Reynolds(4)	—	*
Matthew H. Nord(5)	—	*
Joshua M. Black(5)	—	*
Nathaniel J. Lipman(6)	101,352	*
Gordon J. Coburn(7)	29,574	*
John H. Rexford(6)	87,598	*
Suresh Yannamani	—	*
All directors, named executive officers and other executive officers as a group (9 persons)	82,769,242	53.1%

* Represents holdings of less than one percent.

(1) Percent of class refers to percentage of class beneficially owned as the term beneficial ownership is defined in Rule 13d-3 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and is based upon 152,692,140 shares of Common Stock issued and 150,142,955 shares of Common Stock outstanding, 5,586,344 shares of Common Stock issuable upon conversion of the Series A Preferred Stock, as of April 29, 2019, and 102,093 RSUs that are scheduled to vest immediately prior to our Annual Meeting.

(2) The business address of Mr. Chadha is 8550 West Desert Inn Road, Suite 102-452, Las Vegas, NV 89117. Mr. Chadha is a member of HGM or its affiliates and may be deemed to beneficially own the shares of Common Stock and Series A Perpetual Convertible Preferred Stock beneficially owned by HGM or its affiliates under Rule 13d-3. Mr. Chadha disclaims beneficial ownership of any such shares beneficially owned by HGM, except to the extent of his pecuniary interest therein. See "Ownership of Voting Common Stock—Principal Holders of Voting Common Stock" above. Includes 40,045 RSUs that are scheduled to vest immediately prior to our Annual Meeting.

(3) Mr. Cogburn is affiliated with HGM or its affiliates. Mr. Cogburn disclaims beneficial ownership of shares of Common Stock that are owned by HGM or its affiliates.

(4) Mr. Reynolds is affiliated with HGM or its affiliates. Mr. Reynolds disclaims beneficial ownership of shares of Common Stock that are owned by HGM or its affiliates.

(5) Messrs. Nord and Black are each affiliated with Apollo or its affiliated investment managers and advisors. Messrs. Nord and Black each disclaim beneficial ownership of the shares of Common Stock that are owned by Apollo. The address of Messrs. Nord and Black is c/o Apollo Global Management, LLC, 9 West 57th Street, 43rd Floor, New York, NY 10019.

(6) Includes 31,024 RSUs that are scheduled to vest immediately prior to our Annual Meeting.

(7) Mr. Coburn resigned from the board of directors on February 21, 2019.

CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS

We have adopted a written policy requiring that any related person transaction that would require disclosure under Item 404(a) of Regulation S-K under the Exchange Act be reviewed and approved by our audit committee or, if the audit committee is not able to review the transaction for any reason, the chairman of the audit committee. Compensation matters regarding our executive officers or directors are reviewed and approved by our compensation committee. The policy also provides that, at least annually, any such ongoing, previously approved related person transaction is to be reviewed by the audit committee to ensure that the transaction is in compliance with the audit committee's guidelines and that the transaction remains appropriate. All relevant factors with respect to a proposed related person transaction will be considered, and such a transaction will only be approved if it is in our and our stockholders' best interests. Related persons include our major stockholders and directors and officers, as well as immediate family members of directors and officers.

During 2018, Exela entered into the following transactions with related persons that are required to be reported under the SEC's rules:

Registration Rights Agreement

The Company and certain stockholders, including certain entities affiliated with each of HGM and Apollo, have entered into an Amended and Restated Registration Rights Agreement, which was subsequently amended on April 10, 2018 (the "Registration Rights Agreement"). Under the Registration Rights Agreement, certain stockholders, including affiliates of HGM and Apollo, and their permitted transferees are entitled to certain registration rights described in the Registration Rights Agreement. Among other things, pursuant to the Registration Rights Agreement, affiliates of each of HGM and Apollo are each entitled to participate in five demand registrations, and also have certain "piggyback" registration rights with respect to registration statements filed subsequent to the Business Combination. In addition, Ex-Sigma, an affiliate of HGM, has the right to request up to three demand registrations for the purpose of generating proceeds to repay financing it received in connection with the closing of the Business Combination. We will bear the expenses incurred in connection with the filing of any such registration statements, other than underwriting discounts and selling commissions.

Messrs. Chadha, Cogburn, and Reynolds are each affiliated with HGM and Messrs. Black and Nord are each affiliated with Apollo. Messrs. Cogburn and Reynolds received compensation from Exela as executive officers of Exela. See "Executive Compensation" above.

Director Nomination Agreements

At the closing of the Business Combination, the Company entered into a Director Nomination Agreement (the "Director Nomination Agreement") with each of Novitex Holdings, an affiliate of Apollo, and certain affiliates of HOVS LLC and HandsOn Fund 4 I, LLC, affiliates of HGM (each a "Nominating Stockholder"), which will remain in effect for so long as the applicable Nominating Stockholder (or Nominating Stockholder's affiliate) continues to beneficially own at least 5% of the then outstanding shares of our Common Stock (without giving effect to the exercise of any outstanding warrants to purchase our Common Stock). The Director Nomination Agreements require that the individuals nominated for election as directors by our board of directors shall include a number of individuals selected by each of the Nominating Stockholders such that, upon the election of each such individual, and each other individual nominated by or at the direction of our board of directors or a duly-authorized committee of the Board, as a director of our Company, the individuals selected by each Nominating Stockholder (or Nominating Stockholder's affiliate) shall be: (i) solely with respect to the Director Nomination Agreement with certain affiliates of HOVS LLC and HandsOn Fund 4 I, LLC, for so long as the applicable Nominating Stockholder beneficially owns at least 35% of the then outstanding shares of our Common Stock (without giving effect to the exercise of any outstanding warrants to purchase our Common Stock), three directors; (ii) for so long as the applicable Nominating Stockholder beneficially owns at least 15%, but less than 35%, of the then outstanding shares of Common Stock (without giving effect to the exercise of any outstanding warrants to purchase our Common Stock), two directors; and (iii) for so long as the applicable Nominating Stockholder (or Nominating Stockholder's affiliate) beneficially owns at least 5%, but less than 15%, of the then outstanding shares of our Common Stock (without giving effect to the exercise of any outstanding warrants to purchase our Common Stock), one director. In the case of a vacancy on our board of directors created by the removal or resignation of an individual selected for nomination by a Nominating Stockholder (or Nominating Stockholder's affiliate), the Director Nomination Agreements require us to appoint another individual selected by the applicable Nominating Stockholder. The Director Nomination Agreements also provide for observation rights for each Nominating Stockholder (or Nominating Stockholder's Affiliate) to the extent that it has a right of nomination that it does not utilize.

In addition, the Director Nomination Agreements provide that for so long as a Nominating Stockholder continues to beneficially own at least 15% of the then outstanding shares of our Common Stock (without giving effect to the exercise of any outstanding warrants to purchase our Common Stock), we cannot, without the consent of such Nominating Stockholder, engage in certain related-party transactions, adopt an equity incentive plan or amend the same to increase the number of securities that may be granted thereunder, issue certain equity securities, including with a fair market value of more than $100 million, amend our certificate of incorporation or bylaws in a manner that adversely affects such Nominating Stockholder's rights under the applicable Director Nomination Agreement or has a disproportionate impact on the interests of such Nominating Stockholder, enter into certain new lines of business, or increase or decrease the size of the board of directors or change the classes on which the members of the board of directors serve. For additional information on ownership of each of the Nominating Stockholders, see section entitled "Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters—Principal Holders of Common Stock."

Real Estate

Certain operating companies lease their operating facilities from HOV RE, LLC and HOV Services Limited, which are affiliates of Ex-Sigma 2 LLC, our largest stockholder. HOV RE, LLC leases a property in Antioch, California to HOVG LLC (aka Bay Area Credit Service LLC) and to our subsidiary HOV Services, Inc., pursuant to lease agreements entered into on December 1, 2008 and September 1, 2010, respectively. Additionally, pursuant to a tripartite lease agreement dated November 14, 2016, HOV Services Limited, as landlord, rents to our subsidiaries, BancTec TPS India Private Limited, as lessee, and TransCentra FTS Private Limited, as sub-lessee, a property in Vashi, Navi Mumbai, India. The rental expense for these operating leases was $0.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2018.

Relationship with HandsOn Global Management

Pursuant to a master agreement dated January 1, 2015 between Rule 14, LLC and SourceHOV, the Company incurs marketing fees to Rule 14, LLC, a portfolio company of HGM. In addition, SourceHOV is party to ten master agreements with entities affiliated with HGM's ventures portfolio, each of which were entered into during 2015 and 2016. Each master agreement provides SourceHOV with free use of technology and includes a reseller arrangement pursuant to which SourceHOV is entitled to sell these services to third parties. Any revenue earned by SourceHOV in such third-party sale is shared 75%/25% with each of HGM's venture affiliates in favor of SourceHOV. The brands Zuma, Athena, Peri, BancMate, Spring, Jet, Teletype, CourtQ and Rewardio are part of the HGM ventures portfolio. SourceHOV has the license to use and resell such brands. We incurred fees relating to these agreements of $0.6 million, for the year ended December 31, 2018.

SourceHOV licenses the use of the trademark "HOV" on a non-exclusive basis from HOF 2 LLC, an affiliate of HGM, pursuant to a trademark license agreement dated April 29, 2011.

Relationship with HOV Services, Ltd.

HOV Services, Ltd., a former stockholder of SourceHOV who currently owns equity interest in the Company through Ex-Sigma, provides the Company data capture and technology services. The expense recognized for these services was approximately $1.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2018.

Consulting Agreements

The Company receives services from Oakana Holdings, Inc. The Company and Oakana Holdings, Inc. are related through a family relationship between certain stockholders and the president of Oakana Holdings, Inc. The expense recognized for these services was approximately $0.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2018.

The Company received consulting services from Shadow Pond, LLC. Shadow Pond, LLC is wholly-owned and controlled by Vik Negi, our Executive Vice President Treasury and Business Affairs. The consulting arrangement was established to compensate Mr. Negi for his services to the Company prior to becoming an employee. The expense recognized for these services was approximately $0.1 million, for the year ended December 31, 2018. The consulting arrangement with Shadow Pond, LLC terminated during 2018, and Mr. Negi continues to provide services as an employee of the Company.

Relationship with Apollo Global Management, LLC

The Company provides services to and receives services from certain companies controlled by investment funds affiliated with Apollo.

In April 2016, our wholly owned subsidiary Exela Enterprise Solutions, Inc. ("Exela Enterprise") entered into a master services agreement with Presidio Networked Solutions Group, LLC ("Presidio Group"), a wholly owned subsidiary of Presidio, Inc., a portion of which is owned by investment funds affiliated with Apollo. Pursuant to this master services agreement, Presidio Group provides Exela Enterprise with employees, subcontractors, and/or goods and services. For the year ended December 31, 2018 there were related party expenses of $0.7 million for this service.

On November 18, 2014, Exela Enterprise, entered into a master services agreement with Management Holdings, an indirect wholly-owned subsidiary of Apollo. Pursuant to this master services agreement, Exela Enterprise provides Management Holdings printer supplies and maintenance services, including toner maintenance, training, quarterly business review and printer procurement. The Company recognized revenue from Apollo Holdings under this agreement of approximately $0.6 million in 2018.

On January 18, 2017, Exela Enterprise entered into a master purchase and professional services agreement with Caesars Enterprise Services, LLC ("Caesars"), a portion of which is controlled by investment funds affiliated with Apollo. Pursuant to this master purchase and professional services agreement, Exela Enterprise provides managed print services to Caesars, including general equipment operation, supply management, support services and technical support. We recognized revenue of $4.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2018.

On May 5, 2017, Exela Enterprise entered into a master services agreement with ADT LLC, a portion of which is controlled by investment funds affiliated with Apollo. Pursuant to this master services agreement, Exela Enterprise provides ADT LLC with mailroom and onsite mail delivery services at an ADT LLC office location and managed print services, including supply management, equipment maintenance and technical support services. We recognized revenue of $0.6 million from ADT LLC under this master services agreement for the year ended December 31, 2018.

On July 20, 2017, Exela Enterprise entered into a master services agreement with Diamond Resorts Centralized Services Company. Diamond Resorts Centralized Services Company is controlled by investment funds affiliated with Apollo. Pursuant to this master services agreement, Exela Enterprise provides commercial print and promotional product procurement services to Diamond Resorts Centralized Services Company, including sourcing, inventory management and fulfillment services. The Company recognized revenue of $5.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 and cost of revenue of $0.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 from Diamond Resorts Centralized Services Company under this master services agreement.

Employment Relationships

We have entered into the following related party employment relationships: Matt Reynolds, the brother of our chief financial officer, is employed as our Vice President—Finance, and receives a base salary of $162,567 and may be eligible for additional incentive compensation for 2019; and Andrej Jonovic, the son-in-law of the chairman of our board of directors, is employed as our Executive Vice President, Business Strategy and Corporate Affairs and receives a base salary of $300,000 and may be eligible for additional incentive compensation for 2019.

OTHER MATTERS

Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance

Section 16(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 requires our executive officers, directors and persons who own more than 10% of our Common Stock to file reports with the SEC. Based solely on a review of the copies of reports furnished to us and written representations that no other reports were required, Exela believes that, during 2018, all filing requirements were met on a timely basis.

Solicitation of Proxies

The Company pays all of the costs of soliciting proxies. We will ask banks, brokers and other nominees and fiduciaries to forward the proxy materials to the beneficial owners of our Common Stock and to obtain the authority of executed proxies. We will reimburse them for their reasonable expenses. We did not retain a proxy solicitor in connection with our 2019 annual meeting of stockholders.

Stockholder Proposals for 2020 Annual Meeting

Any stockholder who intends to present a proposal for inclusion in our proxy materials for our 2020 Annual Meeting of Stockholders pursuant to Rule 14a-8 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 must deliver the proposal to the Corporate Secretary of the Company at our principal executive offices, located at 2701 E. Grauwyler Rd., Irving, Texas 75061, not less than one hundred and twenty (120) days before the date of the Company's proxy statement released to shareholders in connection with the previous year's annual meeting.

Any stockholder who intends to nominate a candidate for director election at the 2020 Annual Meeting of Stockholders or who intends to submit a proposal pursuant to our Bylaws without including such proposal in our proxy materials pursuant to Rule 14a-8 must deliver timely notice of the nomination or the proposal to the Corporate Secretary of the Company at our principal executive offices, located at 2701 E. Grauwyler Rd., Irving, Texas 75061, in the form provided in, and by the date required by, our Bylaws. To be timely, a stockholder's notice must be delivered not more than ninety (90) days and not less than sixty (60) days prior to our 2020 Annual Meeting; provided, however, that in the event that less than seventy (70) days' notice or prior public disclosure of the date of the annual meeting is given or made to stockholders, notice must be received no later than the close of business on the tenth (10th) day following the date the notice of the annual meeting date was mailed or published. The written notice must include certain information and satisfy the requirements set forth

in our Bylaws, a copy of which will be sent to any stockholder upon written request to the Corporate Secretary of the Company.

Communications with the Board

Stockholders and other interested parties wishing to communicate with the Board of Directors, the non-management directors or with an individual Board member concerning the Company may do so by writing to the Board, to the non-management directors or to the particular Board member and mailing the correspondence to Exela Technologies, Inc., 2701 E. Grauwyler Rd., Irving, Texas 75061, Attention: General Counsel and Secretary. If from a stockholder, the envelope should indicate that it contains a stockholder communication. All such communication will be forwarded to the director or directors to whom the communications are addressed.

Householding

Under SEC rules, a single set of proxy statements and annual reports may be sent to any household at which two or more stockholders reside if they appear to be members of the same family. Each stockholder continues to receive a separate proxy card. This procedure, referred to as "householding," reduces the volume of duplicate information stockholders receive and reduces mailing and printing expenses. At the present time, we do not "household" for any of our stockholders of record. If a stockholder holds shares in street name, however, such beneficial holder's bank, broker or other nominee may be delivering only one copy of our Proxy Statement and Annual Report on Form 10-K to multiple stockholders of the same household who share the same address, and may continue to do so, unless such stockholder's bank, broker or other nominee has received contrary instructions from one or more of the affected stockholders in the household. We will deliver promptly, upon written or oral request, a separate copy of this Proxy Statement and our Annual Report on Form 10-K to a stockholder at a shared address to which a single copy of the documents was delivered. A beneficial holder who wishes to receive a separate copy of our Proxy Statement and Annual Report on Form 10-K, now or in the future, should submit this request by writing to Exela Technologies, Inc., 2701 E. Grauwyler Rd., Irving, Texas, Attention: Investor Relations Department, or by calling our Investor Relations Department at (972) 821-5808. Beneficial holders sharing an address who are receiving multiple copies of proxy materials and annual reports and who wish to receive a single copy of such materials in the future should contact their bank, broker or other nominee directly to request that only a single copy of each document be mailed to all stockholders at the shared address in the future. Stockholders of record receiving multiple copies of our Proxy Statement and Annual Report on Form 10-K may request householding by contacting our Investor Relations Department either in writing or by telephone at the above address or phone number.

Directions to the 2019 Annual Meeting of Stockholders

The Annual Meeting of Stockholders of Exela Technologies, Inc. will be held at the Company's Innovation Center, 2701 E. Grauwyler Road, Irving, Texas, 75061, at 9:00 a.m., on Friday, May 31, 2019.

To learn more about Exela's Innovation Centers visit https://www.exelatech.com/innovation-centers

From DFW Airport

- Take TX-114 E to N Loop 12/N Walton Walker Service Rd W in Irving.
- Take the Grauwyler Rd exit from TX-12 Loop S
- Follow N Walton Walker Service Road East and East Airport Fwy to East Grauwyler Road

From Dallas Love Field Airport

- Take Herb Kelleher Way to West Mockingbird Lane
- Continue on West Mockingbird Lane
- Take TX-183 W to East Grauwyler Road in Irving

From Dallas

- Take I-35E and TX-183 W to E Airport Fwy/E John Carpenter Fwy in Irving.
- Take the exit toward Grauwyler Road/Spur 482 from TX-183 W
- Drive to East Grauwyler Road

2018 ANNUAL REPORT ON FORM 10-K

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-K

(Mark One)

☒ **ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018

or

☐ **TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the transition period from to

Commission File Number: 001-36788

EXELA TECHNOLOGIES, INC.
(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in its Charter)

Delaware (State of or other Jurisdiction Incorporation or Organization)	**47-1347291** (I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)
2701 E. Grauwyler Rd. **Irving, TX** (Address of Principal Executive Offices)	**75061** (Zip Code)

Registrant's Telephone Number, Including Area Code: **(844) 935-2832**

Securities Registered Pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of Each Class	Name of Each Exchange On Which Registered
Common Stock, Par Value $0.0001 per share	The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC

Indicate by check mark if the Registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. ☐ Yes ☒ No

Indicate by check mark if the Registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. ☐ Yes ☒ No

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant (1) has filed all reports required by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the Registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. ☒ Yes ☐ No

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the Registrant was required to submit such files). ☒ Yes ☐ No

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of Registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K. ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See definitions of “large accelerated filer”, “accelerated filer”, “smaller reporting company” and “emerging growth company” in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer ☐	Accelerated filer ☒	Non-accelerated filer ☐	Smaller reporting company ☒ Emerging growth company ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Act). ☐ Yes ☒ No

The aggregate market value of the Registrant’s voting common equity held by non-affiliates of the Registrant, computed by reference to the price at which such voting common equity was last sold as of June 30, 2018, was approximately $97,579,074 (based on a closing price of $4.75). As a result, the Registrant is an accelerated filer as of December 31, 2018. For purposes of this computation, shares of the voting common equity beneficially owned by each executive officer and director of the Registrant disclosed in the Registrant's Definitive Proxy Statement on Schedule 14A, filed with the SEC on May 9, 2018 were deemed to be owned by affiliates of the Registrant as of June 30, 2018. Such determination should not be deemed an admission that such executive officers and directors are, in fact, affiliates of the Registrant or affiliates as of the date of this Annual Report on Form 10-K. As of March 11, 2019, the Registrant had 150,142,095 shares of common stock outstanding.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

Certain statements included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K ("Annual Report") are not historical facts but are forward-looking statements for purposes of the safe harbor provisions under The Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. Forward-looking statements generally are accompanied by words such as "may", "should", "would", "plan", "intend", "anticipate", "believe", "estimate", "predict", "potential", "seem", "seek", "continue", "future", "will", "expect", "outlook" or other similar words, phrases or expressions. These forward-looking statements include statements regarding our industry, future events, the estimated or anticipated future results and benefits of the Novitex Business Combination, future opportunities for the combined company, and other statements that are not historical facts. These statements are based on the current expectations of Exela management and are not predictions of actual performance. These statements are subject to a number of risks and uncertainties regarding Exela's businesses, and actual results may differ materially. The factors that may affect our results include, among others: the impact of political and economic conditions on the demand for our services; the impact of a data or security breach; the impact of competition or alternatives to our services on our business pricing and other actions by competitors; our ability to address technological development and change in order to keep pace with our industry and the industries of our customers; the impact of terrorism, natural disasters or similar events on our business; the effect of legislative and regulatory actions in the United States and internationally; the impact of operational failure due to the unavailability or failure of third-party services on which we rely; the effect of intellectual property infringement; and other factors discussed in this report under the headings "Risk Factors", "Legal Proceedings", "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and otherwise identified or discussed in this Annual Report. You should consider these factors carefully in evaluating forward-looking statements and are cautioned not to place undue reliance on such statements, which speak only as of the date of this report. It is impossible for us to predict new events or circumstances that may arise in the future or how they may affect us. We undertake no obligation to update forward-looking statements to reflect events or circumstances occurring after the date of this report. We are not including the information provided on the websites referenced herein as part of, or incorporating such information by reference into, this Annual Report. In addition, forward-looking statements provide Exela's expectations, plans or forecasts of future events and views as of the date of this report. Exela anticipates that subsequent events and developments will cause Exela's assessments to change. These forward-looking statements should not be relied upon as representing Exela's assessments as of any date subsequent to the date of this report.

DEFINED TERMS

In this Annual Report, we use the terms "Company", "we", "us", or "our" to refer to Exela Technologies, Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries, and where applicable, our predecessors SourceHOV and Novitex prior to the closing of the Novitex Business Combination. "Following is a glossary of other abbreviations and acronyms that are found in this Annual Report."

"*Apollo"* means Apollo Global Management, LLC, together with its subsidiaries and affiliates, as applicable

"*BPA"* means business process automation.

"*BPO"* means business process outsourcing

"*Code*" means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.

"*Common Stock*" means the common stock of the Company, par value $0.0001.

"*EIM*" means enterprise information management,

"*Exchange Act*" means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

"*GAAP*" means generally accepted accounting principles in the United States.

"*HGM Group*" means, collectively, HOVS LLC and HandsOn Fund 4 I, LLC and certain of their respective affiliates.

“*HITECH Act of 2009*” means the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act, enacted under Title XIII of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009.

“HIPAA” means the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996.

“IT” mean information technology.

“*JOBS Act”* means the Jumpstart our Business Startups Act.

“*MegaCenter”* means the Company’s Tier-III document processing and outsourcing centers in Windsor, Connecticut, and Austin, Texas.

“*Nasdaq*” means The Nasdaq Stock Market.

“*Novitex*” means Novitex Holdings, Inc., a Delaware corporation.

“*Novitex Business Combination*” means the transactions contemplated by the Business Combination Agreement, which closed on July 12, 2017 and resulted in SourceHOV and Novitex becoming our wholly-owned subsidiaries and the financing transactions in connection therewith.

“*Novitex Business Combination Agreement*” means that certain Business Combination Agreement, dated February 21, 2017, among Quinpario Merger Sub I, Inc. (“SourceHOV Merger Sub”), the Company, Quinpario Merger Sub II, Inc. (“Novitex Merger Sub”), SourceHOV, Novitex, HOVS LLC, HandsOn Fund 4 I, LLC and Novitex Parent, L.P., as amended by that certain Consent, Waiver and Amendment, dated June 15, 2017, by and among the Company, SourceHOV Merger Sub, Novitex Merger Sub, SourceHOV, Novitex, Novitex Parent, Ex-Sigma LLC, HOVS LLC and HandsOn Fund 4 I, LLC.

“*Novitex Holdings*” means Apollo Novitex Holdings, L.P., a Delaware limited partnership, which is owned and controlled by certain funds managed by affiliates of Apollo.

“*Novitex Parent*” means Novitex Parent, L.P., a Delaware limited partnership, which is owned and controlled by certain funds managed by affiliates of Apollo.

“*PCIDSS*” means the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard.

“*PIPE Investment*” means the sale of shares of Common Stock in the private placement transaction of Common Stock entered into in connection with the Novitex Business Combination.

“*Quinpario*” means Quinpario Acquisition Corp. 2, a Delaware corporation.

“*SEC*” means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

“*Securities Act*” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

“*SourceHOV*” means SourceHOV Holdings, Inc., a Delaware corporation.

“*TCJA*” means the Tax Cut and Jobs Act.

“*TPS*” means transaction processing solutions.

PART I

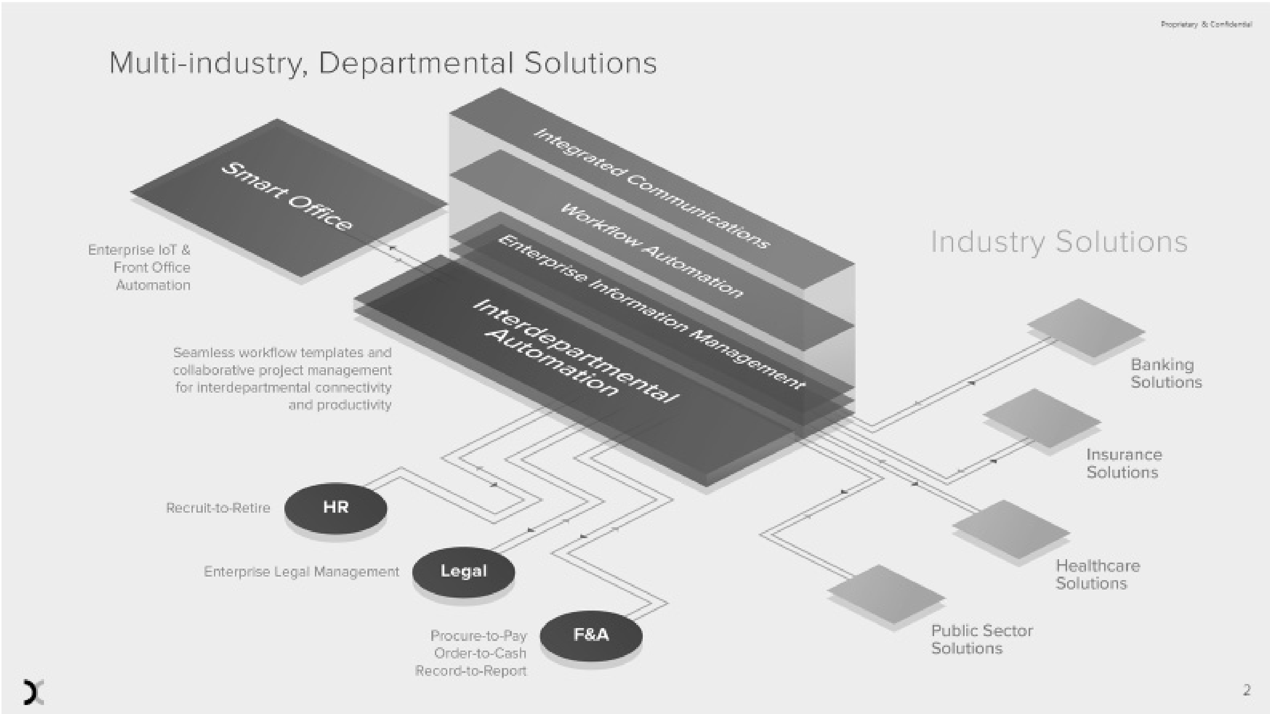
ITEM 1. BUSINESS

Exela is a business process automation leader leveraging a global footprint and proprietary technology to help turn the complex into the simple through user friendly software platforms and solutions that enable our customers’ digital transformation. We have decades of expertise earned from serving many of the world’s largest enterprises, including over 60% of the Fortune® 100 and in many mission critical environments across multiple industries, including banking, healthcare, insurance and manufacturing. For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, we generated $1.586 billion of revenue from over 4,000 customers throughout the world.

Exela’s portals provide on-demand multi industry and departmental solutions and services alongside industry specific solutions.

Our solutions and services touch multiple elements within a customer’s organization. We use a global delivery model and primarily host solutions in our data centers, on the cloud or directly from our customers’ premises. Our approximately 22,000 employees as of December 31, 2018 operate from business facilities in 23 countries, with some of our employees co-located at our customers’ facilities. Our solutions are location agnostic, and we believe the combination of our hybrid hosted solutions and global work force in the Americas, Europe, Asia and Africa offers a meaningful differentiation in the industries we serve and services we provide.

We will continue to further expand our solutions and services for the industries we serve, with a focus on connecting the front, middle and the back office. We believe this positions us as one of the few companies that can offer solutions and services that span from multi-industry, departmental solutions to industry specific solutions.



Our Solutions and Services

Our suite of offerings combines platform modules for finance and accounting services, enterprise information management, robotic process automation, digitial mailroom, business process management and workflow automation, visualization and analytics, contract management and legal management solutions, and integrated communication services which contribute to revenues across our organization and accounting segments and also complement our core industry solutions for banking, insurance, healthcare and the public sector.

Finance and Accounting Solution (F&A)

Exela offers a suite of finance and accounting ("F&A") solutions addressing the payments lifecycle from procure to pay ("P2P") and record-to-report ("R2R") to order to cash ("O2C"). We use our own technology and our global operations to deliver these solutions.

Our P2P services can be integrated with our digital mail room technology, which expands our ability to support existing data types and formats. In effect, both digital and analog items can enter this information stream. The process kicks off by opening of a requisition, once approved it moves to procurement to solicit bids from an approved supplier network. We believe that supporting our customers by making available our supplier network can be a key differentiator in enabling a complete P2P solution. Our P2P platform also records receipt of goods and invoices and performs three way matching digitally. Exceptions are processed by our employees, and once approved, we record the purchase in a customer's enterprise resource planning ("ERP") system, so it can be paid. We then use our system to generate and deliver a payment file in the format the bank needs so a payment can be processed. Some of our customers also authorize us to process the payment on their behalf.

Our O2C solutions enable consolidation of inbound payment channels and data continuity to drive digital adoption and enhanced treasury management including, integrated receivables dashboards, multi-channel bill

presentment and payment, reconciliation, exception and dispute management, aging analytics, collections management and targeted engagements. The full process includes fulfillment of a customer order, raising an invoice according to customer contracts, accounts receivable management and collections. Our mission is to continue to expand our offerings such that we can act as single vendor for these services among our customer base.

Our F&A services include spend analytics and data mining tools for financial planning and analysis to support reporting and audit functions, interchanges and robotics providing automation of ERP entries and regulatory reporting, fixed asset management and tax benefits management.

Enterprise Information Management (EIM)

Exela's enterprise information management solutions ingest and organize large amounts of data across many data types and formats and store the information in cloud enabled proprietary platforms. We also gather transactional data from enterprise systems for similar hosting. The collected, extracted data is used to complete a process, and is then made available to our customers and their end-consumers for an agreed upon period of time. We derive revenue for such hosting and access.

Our EIM systems host billions of mission critical records for our customers and the total number of records is rising. An example of a large deployment of our EIM platform is to enable online records access to over 48 million end-customers of a group of European savings banks for deposits, statements, and car and personal loans and mortgages. Another example of EIM deployment is in the hosting of images of healthcare records, checks and payroll taxes for many years for compliance and internal information purposes.

We often host both digital and paper records for our customers, and offer release of information services according to guidelines set by our customers. For example, in litigation we will release documents upon receipt of a valid subpoena served on our customer or when a patient switches hospitals and requests access to healthcare records from their previous hospital. We provide these records in the form requested, including chain of custody information. Increasingly, these records are accessed electronically or being delivered in line with green initiatives.

Our platforms can be integrated with customers' existing EIM systems, and our customers can benefit from being able to conduct federated searches across connected datasets, manage records in accordance with business needs and regulatory requirements, build live customer and employee profiles, and facilitate release of information and routing with control over security and permissions. We also provide business intelligence add-ons, offering summarization of data sets, dashboards and trend monitoring, relationship visualization, macro and micro drill-down, escalation triggers and notifications.

Exela Robotic Process Automation

Exela has been at the forefront of using robotic process automation since 2009. Our deployment model is to use desktop automation first, and if the usage is very high we usually migrate to server level automation. We have built up a large library of rules by industry and by customer. While we have been using robotic solutions as part of our internal processes for years, only recently have we made them available to our customers. Our domain experts and analysts can either use an existing bot, modify one or create new one using our design studio. Our robotic solutions are available as programmable robots with a rules library for a specific industry or feature, or as an enterprise license or on a per user per month basis.

Digital Mailroom Solutions

Exela is one of the leading global providers of digital mailroom solutions. Our digital mailroom solutions rely on proprietary technology, use our own facilities and process a significant number of transactions daily. We use proprietary high-speed scanners as well as support most major scanners. Our end-to-end digital mail room features ingestion from many sources – paper, fax, electronic, emails and other digital data. We recently added recorded voice, image and video ingestion channels. This solution additionally offers shipping and receiving packages with digital receipt, delivery and routing to our intelligent lockers.

We own several classification engines that we deploy for all traffic, including unattended digital repositories, for example unattended email boxes to discover content and route it to the appropriate member of an organization. Exela offers its digital mail room for enterprise wide deployment to captive mailrooms of our customers, mail rooms outsourced to both Exela and others, and for business locations where there is no dedicated mail room, such as a front desk. Our customers can see their information across the enterprise from a single platform. Our solutions are available as SaaS, BpaaS or enterprise licenses and we offer to take over the entire operation or a transactional digital mail room.

Business process management and workflow automation

Exela has built extensive proprietary work flow automation platforms for business process management across several industries and regions. Our platforms are designed to have intuitive user interfaces with drag & drop configuration enabling analysts a certain amount of customization. Our platforms use our EIM engines as a default and are designed to integrate with popular database and enterprise systems and are offered across three user categories:

- **Enterprise class**, hosted on premise. Suitable for 10,000 or more users and 10,000 or more tasks or process automations. Over 10,000 of our employees use this every day to perform mission critical work for our customers in Americas, Europe and Asia.

- **Interdepartmental class** work flow automation is ideal to bring structure and collaboration across departments. Over 2,500 of our employees globally use this platform to collaborate with each other and their individual work management. The platform is designed to integrate with other industry leading platforms to create a comprehensive collaborative experience. We intend to offer this to our customers in the future.

- **Case-management** work flow automation platform is our shrink wrap version for building custom work flows. One can use our library of work flows, customize them or build one from scratch for purposes of case management only. Customers can buy enterprise licenses of this platform, or on a SaaS basis and build their own work flows.

Visualization and analytics

Exela provides visualization and analytics capabilities within its platforms to provide actionable intelligence tied to collaboration and task management. Configurable dashboards enable users to quickly consolidate and organize disparate data sources through intuitive interfaces, avoiding IT and programming requirements. Users can build their own dashboards with dynamic drilldown options and alerts, link data to managers, and launch action items in pursuit of optimization and issue resolution. By providing analytics tied to actionable tasks, we are able to drive optimization to enhance profitability and connectivity. For example, users can create visualization of volume trends and set triggers upon statistical thresholds, sending SMS alerts to managers to adjust their downstream capacity planning if trends are not in line with set thresholds

While we offer reporting and analytics on the scope of work processed through operations, we also provide our customers the capability to consolidate various data streams into comprehensive dashboards to enhance business intelligence functions of an organization, including providing real-time visibility to revenue, cost, profitability and cash flow as well as process monitoring, KPI tracking, and actionable alerts to name a few.

We believe providing analytics modules complements our services and solutions, creating a superior user experience, and reducing the need for third party tools by centralizing business management within Exela's platforms. By enabling users to share dashboards across their organization, we believe additional users will adopt Exela platforms and increase our penetration into the front-end applications across an enterprise.

Contract Management System

Exela provides a contract management system to streamline execution, organization, and data management of large volumes of contracts. We utilize natural language processing and machine learning to extract key terms within unstructured formats and complex content, providing variance analysis, summary tables, and automated organization.

Users can easily find important data points in contracts, and quickly analyze large volumes of language variations across format types. The extracted data can then be used to connect to existing systems and ERPs and serve as inputs to business operations, such as accounting and billing processes, financial planning and analysis, and regulatory reporting, enabling real-time audit and automated alerts for deviations from contract parameters. By automating key term extraction, our contract management system enables large volumes of contracts to be analyzed, and enable processes such as billing or triggered reminders for significant dates. We believe Exela's ability to cost effectively provide high accuracy transactional operations with automated validations creates a competitive advantage against those relying on manual processes and discrete sampling.

Exela can also provide a digital signature system to streamline collaboration, approvals and execution of contracts. We deploy a secure, hosted environment to request and execute signatures and exchange contracts and documents across individuals or groups. Our platform enables multiple signature execution with routing through approval hierarchies, while providing transparency to the status and tracking of comments and edits. Upon execution, documents are stored electronically for secure archival and retrieval.

Legal Management Solutions

Exela offers a suite of enterprise legal management solutions and services that streamline and automate legal department processes to rationalize costs and drive productivity. Solutions and services range from preventative remediation, identifying risk such as overcharges, discrimination, and data breaches and proactively providing restitution, eDiscovery, word processing and contract management using automated summarization and metadata extraction along with cognitive search enabled by natural language processing; and records management.

Integrated Communications

Exela's comprehensive multi-channel integrated communications solutions help customers communicate with other businesses or customers. This suite of solutions links through many channels, for example, email, print and mail, SMS, web, voice, and chat. Exela solutions and service can also include design and marketing and selection of optimal engagement and least cost routing for mission critical communications for example, bills, statements, enrollments, customer support, targeted marketing, mass notifications, reprographics, and regulatory notices.

We work with our customers as a digital migration partner to improve user experience while helping to reduce and even eliminate inefficient, wasteful communications. We use proprietary discovery techniques and analytics in addition to service specific technology to propose optimal channel and content. Our employees can also generate personalized messages, customized promotions, incentives, escalations, and resolutions.

Exela Smart Office

During 2018, we have been engineering a group of solutions that complement our existing offerings, labeled Exela Smart Office℠ ("Smart Office"). At present, lack of technology integration hinders optimal workplace experience and leads to waste. The Smart Office seeks to improve employee and visitor experiences while optimizing facility management efficiency. Smart Office is our enterprise IoT, which helps transform the front-office, energy and facilities management, logistics and fulfillment for our customers, and will provide on-demand services with connected devices to facilitate green initiatives, reduce waste, and ultimately enhance the employee and visitor experience For example, our space management software uses sensors to detect facility utilization enabling optimized space and energy usage and provides mobile workers directions to available work space, while our Visitor Management System and lobby kiosk can be deployed to regulate facility access. Our Intelligent Lockers are then available for visitor day storage of luggage and to provide a secure chain of custody for parcels and accountable mail for employees using our hosted shipping and receiving tools. There is also a Digital Mailroom offering part of Smart Office, which segregates white mail and aggregates, classifies and routes searchable multi-media mail to the appropriate recipient. Smart Office will be launched for sale in 2019.

Recruit-to-Retire (HR)

In late 2018, we also started moving our employees to our proprietary human capital management platform. This platform integrates with our existing offerings and is designed to help an enterprise and its employees manage the data and processes relevant to the entire employment lifecycle from recruitment to retirement. By providing digital management and data tracking for human capital, we enable reduction in administrative overhead and enhanced management of human capital productivity while improving the overall experience. We intend to begin commercializing this platform in 2019.

While the above described solutions and services can be leveraged across industries, over the years we have developed services and solutions for specific industries. The most significant are summarized below.

Banking and Financial Industry Solutions and Services

Our banking and financial solutions are divided into payment, mortgage, enrollment, lending and loan management, governance and information management solutions and accounted for approximately 23% of 2018 revenue. Exela's payment operations and treasury management solutions are designed to improve digital engagement and transaction speed and compliance. We also provide mobile and remote deposit technologies to our banking and financial services customers.

We have extensive experience and technology that we have built over decades and in use to serve many banks and companies to process the payments related to business to business ("B2B") or business to consumer ("B2C") transactions. We develop, use, and sell proprietary integrated receivables processing technology, providing our customers with a solution that easily consolidates B2B and B2C transactions across many payment channels into a single platform. We plan to offer this as branded and as a private label solution to our banking customers giving them the ability to offer advanced treasury solutions with insights from accounts receivable, customer credit worthiness, payment habits, soft collections and delinquent collections.

We are one of the largest processors of payments. We handle many payment channels in addition to checks and credit cards including, automated clearing house (ACH), Faster Payments in UK and Ireland, Single European Payment Area (SEPA), Bank Giro in the Nordic countries and other payment networks. We perform these services on behalf of banks or their customers. We believe regulation in many geographies is opening up for non-bank payment processors to connect to the payment networks directly such that one can verify funds, confirm payee and settlement of payments and are exploring the possibility of obtaining license where required to further expand our payment offerings.

Our proprietary mortgage and loan management solutions enable lenders to originate loans and service them. Our platforms also enable invoice discounting, factoring, payable financing and leverage automation and integration such that traditional lenders, alternate lenders including peer to peer lenders can provide liquidity to underserved borrowers. We add value by automating manual, repetitive processes to improve speed and provide cost efficiencies within a compliant mortgage and lending completion process.

Our key focus is user experience, enabling faster decisions, and facilitating optimal allocation of capital and risk management for our customers. By using our F&A solutions and services, we believe our banking and financial services customers can better manage their lending book and at a low cost of ownership.

Our banking solutions help organizations transform compliance, know your customer, anti-money laundering and confirmation of payee checks into a competitive advantage, including accelerated digital on-boarding, complex process automation, screening and monitoring and predictive analytics. Exela can provide these services as an end-to-end solution or as an augmentation of existing banking processes, license technology as well as use our employees to manage a component or an entire process.

Healthcare Industry Solutions and Services for Insurance Companies and Healthcare Providers

Exela's healthcare industry customers are both commercial and government sponsored healthcare plans including dental, primarily hospital networks and university hospital systems and large medical distribution systems and pharmacy networks, and accounted for approximately 21% of total revenues in 2018. We serve our customers using our proprietary technology and for some customers combined with their systems. .

We bundle our core solutions and services with a suite of healthcare payer specific services such as end-to-end processing of complex transactions, enrollments and credentialing, claims processing, adjudication and payment operations. We specialize in transactions that require multiple layers of validation, supporting documentation processing, reconciliation, and management of exceptions.

We host a proprietary platform that connects providers and payers for claims submissions, acknowledgements or denials or payments and many other interactions covering the complete lifecycle of a claim, which enables a more satisfactory engagement between payers and providers and contributes to improved access to health care and lower administrative costs. Our payer customers often encourage their contracted providers to adopt our digital platforms for overall reduction of claim processing cost. We also provide our healthcare provider customers with many services including computer assisted coding, audit and recovery of underpayments, denial and grievances, release of information, and electronic health records. We plan to offer our mobile and web enrollment solutions, appointment scheduling and locating providers with ratings, also include insurance verification, cost of visit estimates and visit pre-approval. We provide some of these services and features on a stand-alone basis and in the future we plan to offer a more integrated solution.

Insurance Industry Solutions and Services

Exela offers a suite of insurance industry solutions aimed at providing digital engagements and rapid integration of disparate systems and silos. Our insurance industry solutions accounted for approximately 16% of total revenues in 2018. We provide applications and services to facilitate automation and digital transformation for underwriting and enrollments, premium payments, claims submission, first notification of loss, fraud, waste & abuse monitoring and integrated communications. Our solutions are aimed at improving the customer experience by providing digital pathways and transparency with web portals and integrated communications, while improving the quality and risk management.

Public Sector

We provide technology and solutions, including deploying our employees, to public sector customers. Our public sector solutions accounted for approximately 7% of total revenues in 2018. Our mission is to help our public sector customers with their digital journey and meet their objectives of better serving the public. Exela solutions are primarily deployed across pension benefits and administration, tax return processing, payment operations, inter-agency information management and communications with citizens and employees of government institutions.

Our solutions have evolved over time to include digital capabilities and are designed to reduce taxpayer refund waiting time, decrease the potential for tax fraud, and provide reports and data to all the departments. Exela also has the infrastructure in place to process payments, perform collection services, handle overflow taxpayer calls, provide e-filing for individual income tax, generate outbound taxpayer notification (traditional and/or electronic notifications), and host other developed solutions.

Commercial, Tech, Manufacturing, and Legal Industries Solutions and Services

For the commercial, technology, manufacturing and legal industries, we primarily provide multi-industry solutions described previously. For 2018, our commercial industry revenue accounted for approximately 20% of total revenues, our revenues from the technology and manufacturing industry accounted for approximately 8%, while our revenue from the legal industry accounted for approximately 6%.

Historically, the majority of revenue for the above-mentioned industries was generated in the Americas, though we believe there is significant expansion opportunity throughout Europe and Asian markets. As we have made investments in our global scale, technology platforms, and business strategy, some of our multi-national customers have expanded our services to other geographies to leverage our international footprint. We believe our value proposition as a single source provider with global platforms and location agnostic operations, positions us as a differentiated partner to our multi-national customers.

With the launch of Smart Office, we will be targeting technology companies in our initial go-to-market approach. We believe technology companies have a heavy focus on employee experience to attract top tier talent, and they often serve as early adopters for new offerings setting trends across other industries, and we believe will serve as strong references as we expand our Smart Office growth strategy.

Overview of Revenues

Our business consists of three reportable segments:

- ***Information and Transaction Processing Solutions ("ITPS").*** The ITPS segment is our largest segment, with $1,273.6 million of revenues for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, representing 80% of our revenues. We generate ITPS revenues primarily from a transaction-based pricing model for the various types of volumes processed, licensing and maintenance fees for technology sales, and a mix of fixed management fee and transactional revenue for document logistics and location services.

- ***Healthcare Solutions ("HS")***. The HS segment generated $228.0 million of revenues for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, representing 15% of our revenues. We generate HS revenues primarily from a transaction-based pricing model for the various types of volumes processed for healthcare payers and providers.

- ***Legal & Loss Prevention Services ("LLPS").*** The LLPS segment generated $84.6 million of revenues for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, representing 5% of our revenues. We generate LLPS revenues primarily based on time and materials pricing as well as through transactional services priced on a per item basis.

Additional financial information for our three business segments is included in Note 17 within our consolidated financial statements.

We provide services to our customers on a global basis. In 2018, our revenues by geography were as follows: $1,347.5 million in the United States (85.0% of total revenues), $211.3 million in Europe (13.2% of total revenues), and $27.4 million from the rest of the world (1.7% of total revenues). We present additional geographical financial information in Note 17 within our consolidated financial statements.

Our revenues can be affected by various factors such as our customers' demand pattern for our services. These factors have historically resulted in higher revenues and profits in the fourth quarter. Backlog is not a metric that we use to measure our business.

History and Development of Our Company

Exela is a Delaware corporation that was formed through the strategic combination of SourceHOV Holdings, Inc. ("SourceHOV") a leading global transaction processing company, and Novitex Holding, Inc. ("Novitex"), a cloud-based document outsourcing company, pursuant to a business combination agreement dated February 21, 2017. Formerly known as Quinpario Acquisition Corp. 2 ("Quinpario"), Exela was originally formed as a blank check company on July 15, 2014 and completed its initial public offering on January 22, 2015. In conjunction with the completion of the Novitex Business Combination in July 2017, Quinpario was renamed "Exela Technologies, Inc." Exela began trading under the ticker "XELA" on the Nasdaq Stock Market on July 13, 2017.

The Novitex Business Combination was accounted for as a reverse merger for which SourceHOV was determined to be the accounting acquirer. The acquisition of Novitex was accounted for using the acquisition method. As

a result, the financial information for 2017 presented in this Annual Report is not pro forma (unless labeled as such); it includes the financial information and activities for SourceHOV for the entire year ending December 31, 2017, but only reflects the financial information and activities of Novitex for the period following the Novitex Business Combination from July 13, 2017 to December 31, 2017.

On April 10, 2018, Exela completed the acquisition of Asterion International Group, a well-established provider of technology driven business process outsourcing, document management and business process automation across Europe. The acquisition was strategic to expanding Exela's European business.

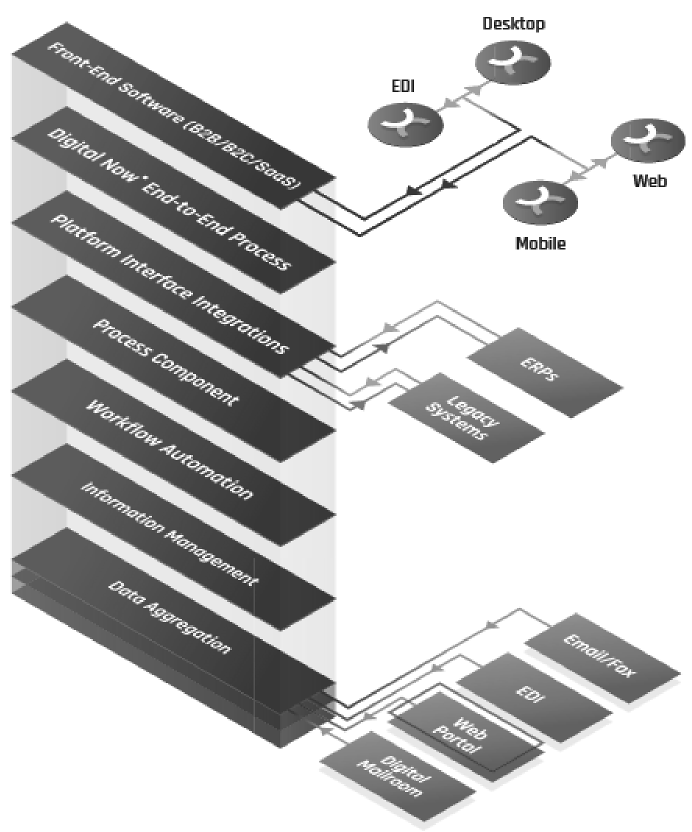
Key Business Strategies

Exela business strategy is to use its Digital Now model, which aims to accelerate our customers' digital transformation through deployment of our software and automation techniques, hosted within a single, cloud hosted platform. Our overarching goal is to provide highest value and lowest cost of ownership. We accomplish this by building scalable systems that are used by our employees to deliver business process automation services globally. The key elements of our growth strategy are described below:

- **Expand Penetration of Solution Stack Across Customer Base.** We seek to move up what we call "the seven layers of technology enabled solutions and services stack," climbing the value chain from discrete services to end-to-end processes through use of front-end enterprise software. We believe continued deployment of our single sign on portals with on-demand applications will drive expansion of our front-end software (B2B/B2C/SaaS) and integrated offerings.

    - **Layer 1 - Data Aggregation -** Host, gather, extract all types of structured and unstructured data, digital and analog
    - **Layer 2 - Information Management -** Digital classifications, data enhancement and normalization driving downstream processes improvement
    - **Layer 3 - Workflow Automation -** Digital connectivity and automated decisioning driving productivity and quality
    - **Layer 4 - Process Component -** Operations partner for component(s) of larger process, handing off output file for downstream execution
    - **Layer 5 - Platform Interface Integrations -** Exela platforms directly connected to customers' core systems, accessed through SSO and common interfaces
    - **Layer 6 - Digital Now® End-to-End Process -** Full cycle operations and technology for multi-channel process through execution of business outcomes
    - **Layer 7 - Front-End Software (B2B/B2C/SaaS) -** Exela front end applications (branded or private label) directly interfacing with end user experience

See diagram of 7 layers of solutions below:



- **Expand relationships with existing customers.** We intend to aggressively pursue cross-sell and up-sell opportunities within our existing customer base. With an installed base of over 4,000 customers, we believe we have meaningful opportunities to offer a bundled suite of services and be a "one-stop-shop" for our customers' information and transaction processing needs. Our sales force will continue to be organized on an industry basis and will be re-deployed to remove duplication, and utilize solutions and relationships to better serve our customers across all levels of their organizations. Our sales force will be incentivized to drive additional revenue opportunities across our bases while also driving higher-margin bundled solutions. As an example, we now offer a full suite of healthcare-focused solutions by bundling enrollments, policy and plan management, claims processing, audit and recovery services, payment solutions, integrated accounts payable and receivable, medical records management, and unified communication services for payers and providers.

- **Leverage BPA suite across on-site services.** Approximately 5,000 of our employees currently work at customers in an on-site capacity. We believe this on-site presence is a competitive differentiator and a valuable asset as we pursue future growth opportunities. We aim to deploy our BPA software across these customer locations, and we believe that by offering our customers enhanced productivity and quality through our onsite employees, we will create additional opportunities to expand our footprint and wallet share across the organization. For example, in customers where we provide underwriting support and claims processing, we can enable our onsite employees to accelerate the aggregation and analysis of datasets while also increasing accuracy and automatically flagging deficiencies. By enhancing the productivity and quality of our onsite employees, we believe we will increase the demand from our customers to replicate our processes across the organization, bolstering our cross-sell/up-sell initiatives. By having our BPA suite already approved and

deployed within existing onsite engagements, we believe our ability to expand into new lines of business will be streamlined and accelerated.

- **Pursue new customer opportunities.** We plan to continue to develop new long-term, strategic customer relationships, especially where we have an opportunity to deliver a wide range of our capabilities and can have a meaningful impact on our customers' business outcomes. For example, we plan to dedicate resources within the legal industry in order to pursue opportunities in e-discovery and contract management services.

- **Develop additional process capabilities and industry expertise.** We will focus on developing additional process capabilities and market expertise for our core industries. We will continue to invest in technology and innovation that will accelerate the build-out of our portfolio of next-generation solutions, such as platform-based descriptive and predictive analytics services for processing flows of "Big Data" to help customers gain better insight into their processes and businesses. As an example, on behalf of our customers, we are deploying Big Data automation platforms to analyze individual consumer behavior and interaction patterns to identify opportunities for revenue enhancement and loss prevention, and configure optimal outreach campaigns to drive sales, loyalty, and profitability.

- **Pursue meaningful cost synergy opportunities and accelerate long-term profitability.** We have identified significant cost synergies that may result from the closing of the Novitex Business Combination. Due to similar operating infrastructures between SourceHOV and Novitex, we continue to deliver and believe we have additional opportunities across information technology, operations, facilities, and corporate functions to achieve cost savings executable as we approach 2 years from the closing of the Novitex Business Combination.

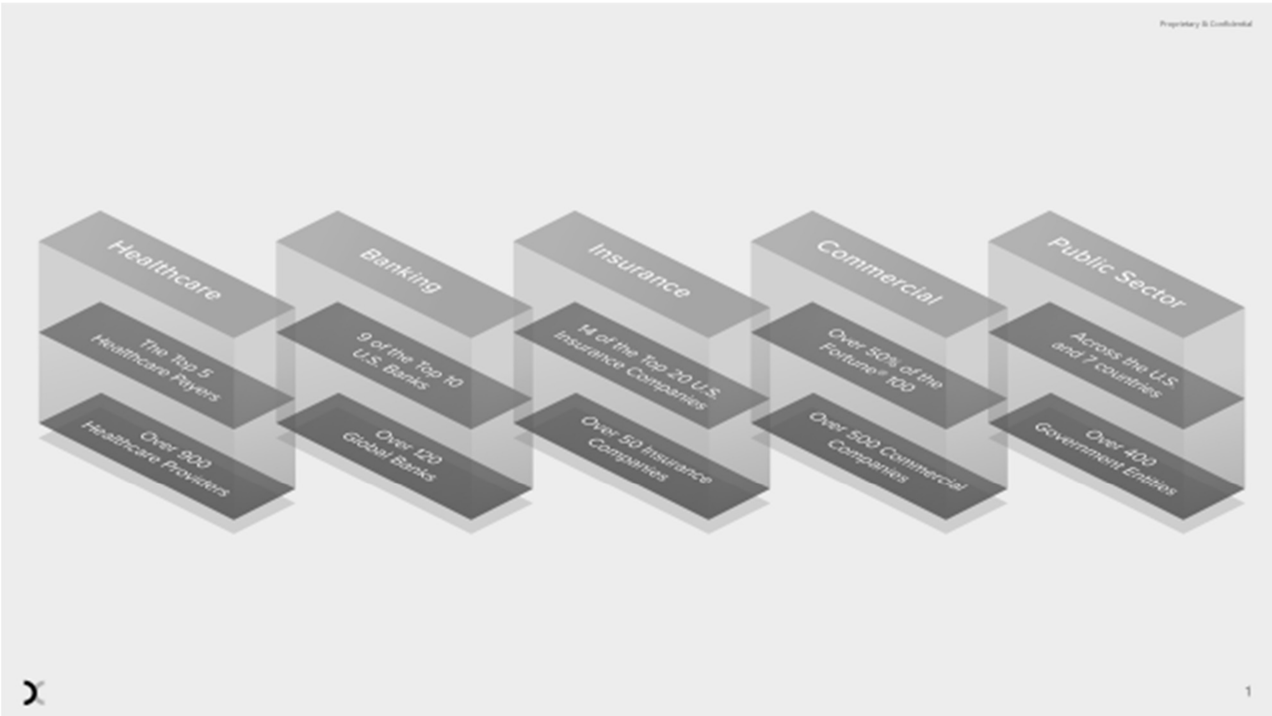
- **Capitalize on our enhanced scale and operating capacity.** We intend to utilize our increased global scale and brand recognition to strengthen our ability to bid on new opportunities. We plan to dedicate more resources to pursue whitespace coverage to expand our range of service offerings and pursue additional cross-selling opportunities. We will also look to use our increased scale and operations expertise to improve utilization of our assets. As an example, we have pursued a strategy of consolidating smaller regional document processing centers to our two Tier-III document processing and outsourcing centers in Windsor, Connecticut, and Austin, Texas that we call "MegaCenters," which is increasing efficiency through economies of scale. By driving utilization up from the current levels of the MegaCenters, we will benefit from high flow through margins from increased revenues with minimal incremental investment.

Customers

We serve over 4,000 customers across a variety of industries, including over 60% of the Fortune® 100. Our customers are among the leading companies in their respective industries, and many of them are recurring customers that have maintained long-term relationships with us and our predecessor companies.

We have successfully leveraged our relationships with customers to offer extended value chain services, creating stickier customer relationships and increasing overall margins. Customers are increasingly turning to us due to a demonstrated ability to work on large-scale projects, past performance and record of delivery, and deep domain expertise accumulated from years of experience in key verticals. As a result, our stable base of customers and sticky, long-term relationships lead to highly predictable revenues.

Customer and Industry Highlights



We maintain a strong mix of diversified customers with low customer concentration. No customer accounts for more than 10% of 2018 revenue. The diversity of our customer base has contributed to the stability and predictability of our revenue streams and cash flows. We have been able to effectively balance our customer mix and reduce dependency on any single customer or vertical by penetrating a diverse set of end markets.

Research and Development

Our ability to continue to compete successfully depends heavily upon our ability to ensure a timely flow of competitive products, services and technologies to the marketplace while also leveraging our domain expertise to demonstrate our understanding in implementing solutions across the industries we serve. Through regular and sustained investment, licensing of intellectual property and acquisition of third-party businesses and technology, we continue to develop new knowledge platforms, applications and supporting service bundles that enhance and expand our existing suite of services.

Our seven layer technology model requires us to continue to harness our capabilities in each layer and the ultimate measure of success will be how many customers are in each layer. We believe that a greater customer concentration in the top layers will reflect the success of our R&D strategy. Additional financial information regarding our R&D expense is included in Note 2 within our consolidated financial statements.

Intellectual Property

We deploy a combination of internally-developed proprietary knowledge platforms, applications and generally available third-party licensed software as part of our scalable and flexible solutions and services. Our intellectual property is our competitive strength.

Our platforms aim to enhance information management and workflow processes through automation and process optimization to minimize labor requirements or to improve labor performance. Our decisioning engines have

been built with years of deep domain expertise, incorporating hundreds of thousands of customer and industry specific rules which enable the most efficient and lowest cost preparation and decisioning of transactions. Our business processes and implementation methodologies are confidential and proprietary and include trade secrets that are important to our business. We own a variety of trademarks and patents, which are registered or pending.

We regularly enter into nondisclosure agreements with customers, business partners, employees, and contractors that require confidential treatment of our information to establish, maintain and enforce our intellectual property rights. Our licensed intellectual properties are generally governed by written agreements of varying durations, including some with fixed terms that are subject to renewal based on mutual agreement. Generally, each agreement may be further extended and we have historically been able to renew existing agreements before they expire. We expect these and other similar agreements to be extended so long as it is mutually advantageous to both parties at the time of renewal.

Competition

We believe that the principal competitive factors in providing our solutions include proprietary platforms, industry specific knowledge, quality, reliability and security of service, and price. We are differentiated competitively given our scale of operations, reputation as a trusted partner with deep domain expertise, innovative solutions, and highly integrated technology platforms that provide customers with end-to-end services addressing many aspects of their mission-critical operational processes. We continue to integrate best practice delivery processes into our service-delivery capabilities to improve its quality and service levels and to increase operational efficiencies. The markets in which we serve are competitive with both large and small businesses, as well as global companies:

- Multi-national companies that provide data aggregation, information management and workflow automation services, such as IBM, EMC, OpenText, Hyland, Iron Mountain, Canon, and Ricoh;
- Consulting, discrete process and platform integration service providers such as Fiserv, Jack Henry, FIS, Black Knight Financial, Optum, Broadridge Financial Solutions, Computershare, Cognizant, and Accenture;
- Platform and front-end software providers, such as Workday, Salesforce, Blackline and Pega;
- Multi-shore BPO companies, such as Genpact, Cognizant, Exl service, Conduent, Wipro, and WNS; and
- Smaller, niche service providers in specific verticals or geographic markets.

Regulation and Compliance

We handle, directly or indirectly through customer contracts and business associate agreements, a significant amount of information, including personal and health-related information, which results in our being subject to federal, state and local privacy laws, including the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, HIPAA and the HITECH Act of 2009. Further, we are subject to the local rules and regulations in the other countries in which we operate, including those relating to the handling of information. In addition, services in our LLPS segment, though not directly regulated, must be provided in a manner consistent with the relevant legal framework. For example, our bankruptcy claims administration services must be provided in accordance with the requirements and deadlines of the United States Bankruptcy Code and Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. In addition, some of our customers are subject to regulatory oversight, which may result in our being reviewed from time to time by such oversight bodies. Further, as a government contractor, we are subject to associated regulations and requirements.

Other laws apply to our processing of individually identifiable information. These laws have been subject to frequent changes, and new legislation in this area may be enacted at any time. Changes to existing laws, introduction of new laws in this area, or failure to comply with existing laws that are applicable to us may subject us to, among other things, additional costs or changes to our business practices, liability for monetary damages, fines and/or criminal prosecution, unfavorable publicity, restrictions on our ability to obtain and process information and allegations by our customers and customers that we have not performed our contractual obligations, any of which may have a material adverse effect on profitability and cash flow.

Privacy and Information Security Regulations

The processing and transfer of personal information is required to provide certain of our services. Data privacy laws and regulations in the U.S. and foreign countries apply to the access, collection, transfer, use, storage, and destruction of personal information. In the U.S., our financial institution customers are required to comply with privacy regulations imposed under the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, in addition to other regulations. As a processor of personal information in our role as a provider of services to financial institutions, we are required to comply with privacy regulations and are bound by similar limitations on disclosure of the information received from our customers as apply to the financial institutions themselves. We also perform services for healthcare companies and are, therefore, subject to compliance with laws and regulations regarding healthcare information, including in the U.S., HIPAA. We also perform credit-related services and agree to comply with payment card standards, including the PCIDSS. In addition, federal and state privacy and information security laws, and consumer protection laws, which apply to businesses that collect or process personal information, also apply to our businesses.

Privacy laws and regulations may require notification to affected individuals, federal and state regulators, and consumer reporting agencies in the event of a security breach that results in unauthorized access to, or disclosure of, certain personal information. Privacy laws outside the U.S. may be more restrictive and may require different compliance requirements than U.S. laws and regulations, and may impose additional duties on us in the performance of our services.

There has been increased public attention regarding the use of personal information and data transfer, accompanied by legislation and regulations intended to strengthen data protection, information security and consumer and personal privacy. The law in these areas continues to develop and the changing nature of privacy laws in the U.S., the European Union (“E.U”) and elsewhere could impact our processing of personal information of our employees and on behalf of our customers. In the E.U. the comprehensive General Data Privacy Regulation (the "GDPR") went into effect in May 2018. The GDPR has introduced significant privacy-related changes for companies operating both in and outside the EU. While we believe that we are compliant with our regulatory responsibilities, information security threats continue to evolve resulting in increased risk and exposure. In addition, legislation, regulation, litigation, court rulings, or other events could expose us to increased costs, liability, and possible damage to our reputation.

Employees

The continued success of our business is driven by our people. Our senior leadership team has extensive experience within the larger BPO as well as the BPA industries. As we were formed through a series of acquisitions, we have retained an experienced and cohesive leadership team. The combination of our employees with our technology is the backbone of our ability to provide holistic solutions designed to meet the rapidly evolving needs of our customers.

As of December 31, 2018, we had approximately 22,000 total employees, which included approximately 21,000 full-time and 1,000 part-time employees. We have a global workforce with a majority of our employees located in the United States, and the remainder located in Europe, Northern Africa, India, the Philippines, Mexico and China. Our employee count fluctuates from time to time based upon the timing and duration of our engagements. We consider our relationship with our employees to be good.

We locate our operation centers in areas where the value proposition it offers is attractive relative to other local opportunities, resulting in an engaged educated multi-lingual workforce that is able to make a meaningful global contribution from their local marketplace. To supplement the skills available in certain markets, we offer our employees a focused set of training programs to increase their skills and leadership capabilities with the goal of creating a long-term funnel of talent to support the Company's continued growth. Additionally, our proprietary platforms enable rapid learning and facilitate knowledge transfer among employees, reducing training time.

Available Information

Our website address is www.exelatech.com. We are not including the information provided on our website as a part of, or incorporating it by reference into, this Annual Report. We make available free of charge (other than an investor's own internet access charges) through our website our annual reports on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, current reports on Form 8-K, and amendments to these reports, as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file such material with, or furnish such material to, the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"). In addition, we make available our code of ethics entitled "Global Code of Ethics and Business Conduct" free of charge through our website. We intend to post on our website all disclosures that are required by law or Nasdaq listing standards concerning any amendments to, or waivers from, any provision of our code of ethics.

The public may read and copy any materials filed by us with the SEC at the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, NE, Room 1580, Washington, DC 20549. The public may obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. The SEC maintains an internet site that contains reports, proxy and information statements and other information regarding issuers that file electronically with the SEC at www.sec.gov. The information contained on the websites referenced in this Annual Report is not incorporated by reference into this filing.

Executive Officers

The following table sets forth information concerning our executive officers as of March 15, 2019:

Name	Age	Position
Ronald Cogburn	64	Chief Executive Officer
James (Jim) Reynolds	50	Chief Financial Officer
Suresh Yannamani	53	President
Mark Fairchild	59	President, Exela Smart Office
Shrikant Sortur	46	Executive Vice President, Global Finance
Srini Murali	46	President, Americas and APAC
Vitalie Robu	47	President, EMEA

Ronald Cogburn is our Chief Executive Officer and served as Chief Executive Officer of SourceHOV from 2013 until the closing of the Novitex Business Combination. Mr. Cogburn has been part of companies that were predecessors to SourceHOV since 1993, bringing over 30 years of diversified experience in executive management, construction claims consulting, litigation support, program management project management, cost estimating, damages assessment and general building construction. Mr. Cogburn has also been a principal of HGM since 2003. Prior to his role as Chief Executive Officer of SourceHOV, Mr. Cogburn was SourceHOV's President, KPO from March 2011 to July 2013. Prior to this role, Mr. Cogburn was the President of HOV Services, LLC from January 2005 to September 2007, providing executive leadership during the company's growth to its IPO on the India Stock Exchange in September 2006. Mr. Cogburn has a BSCE in Structural Design/Construction Management from Texas A&M University and is a registered Professional Engineer.

Jim Reynolds is our Chief Financial Officer and has served in that role since the closing of the Novitex Business Combination. Mr. Reynolds served as Co-Chairman of SourceHOV from 2014 until the closing of the Novitex Business Combination in 2017. Mr. Reynolds is also the Chief Operating Officer and a Partner at HGM, bringing over 25 years of industry experience to the team. Prior to HGM Mr. Reynolds held numerous executive management or senior advisory positions at SourceHOV and its related subsidiaries and predecessor companies, including serving as Chief Financial Officer for HOV Services, LLC from 2007 to 2011 and Vice President and Corporate Controller for Lason from 2001 to 2006. Mr. Reynolds was a Senior Manager in the Business Advisory Services Practice at PricewaterhouseCoopers from 1990 to 2001. Mr. Reynolds is a C.P.A. and holds a B.S. in Accounting from Michigan State University.

Suresh Yannamani is our President and served as President, Americas of SourceHOV from 2011 until the closing of the Novitex Business Combination, and has been a part of companies that were predecessors to SourceHOV from 1997 until the closing of the Novitex Business Combination. Mr. Yannamani oversees the sales and operations and plays a large part in scaling the transaction processing solutions practice and enterprise solution strategy for healthcare, financial services and commercial industries. Mr. Yannamani was also President of HOV Services, LLC from 2007 to 2011, serving customers in the healthcare, financial services, insurance and commercial industries. Mr. Yannamani was the Executive Vice President of BPO services for Lason from 1997 to 2007 prior to its acquisition by HOV Services, LLC. Mr. Yannamani also served in management roles at IBM from 1995 to 1997, managing the design, development, and implementation of financial management information systems for the Public Sector and worked for Coopers & Lybrand as a consultant in public audits from 1992 to 1994. Mr. Yannamani has a bachelor's degree in Chemistry from the University of London and holds an MBA from Eastern Michigan University.

Mark Fairchild is our President, Exela SmartOffice and served as President of Exela Enterprise Solutions from the Novitex Business Combination until January 2019 and prior to that served as President, Europe, of SourceHOV from the merger of BancTec and SourceHOV in 2014, having served in management roles at BancTec since 1985. With more than 30 years of executive experience in the financial services industry, Mr. Fairchild specializes in global account management, transaction processing services, software solutions and hardware technology products. In 2005, Mr. Fairchild was appointed Chief Technology Officer of BancTec and was responsible for the company's software and hardware products, manufacturing and internal IT services until 2014. Prior to this role, Mr. Fairchild acted as Vice President for International Operations of BancTec from 2001 to 2005 and VP of European Operations from 1998 to 2001. In his role as International Systems Director from 1991 to 1998, Mr. Fairchild led the European software teams, implementing payment platforms throughout the region. As Director of Engineering of BancTec from 1989 to 1991, Mr. Fairchild led the research and development team that introduced a new high-speed digital image processing system that formed the base of BancTec's ImageFIRST product portfolio. Mr. Fairchild joined BancTec as a Project Manager, a position he held from 1985 to 1986. He began his career as a software developer at British Aerospace, where he worked from 1981 to 1985. Mr. Fairchild graduated with honors from Manchester University with a bachelor's degree in aeronautical engineering and an MBA from London Business School.

Shrikant Sortur is our Executive Vice President, Global Finance and served as Senior Vice President, Global Finance of SourceHOV from 2016 until the closing of the Novitex Business Combination. He was responsible for SourceHOV's finance and accounting groups and led financial operations, activities, plans and budgets. Mr. Sortur's career spans more than 19 years of varied experience in financial management, accounting, reporting, and lean operations. Mr. Sortur served in other management roles in predecessor companies to SourceHOV from 2002 until the closing of the Novitex Business Combination. Mr. Sortur also acted as Vice President of Finance of SoureHOV from June 2015 to May 2016. Mr. Sortur acted as Director of Financial Planning and Analysis, TPS from January 2014 to June 2015. Prior to this role, Mr. Sortur was the Director of Financial Planning and Analysis, North America Operations from January 2012 to December 2013. Mr. Sortur acted as Controller for HOV Global from January 2009 to December 2011. Mr. Sortur was a Senior Accounting Manager for HOV Services, LLC / Lason, Inc. from May 2004 to December 2008 and worked for the SourceHOV group as a Manager, Finance & Accounts for Lason India Ltd. from December 2002 to May 2014. From March 1999 to December 2002, Mr. Sortur served as General Manager, Finance at SRM Technologies, a business solutions and technology provider specializing in software design and development, systems integration, web services, enterprise mobilization, and embedded solutions development. From June 1997 to February 1999, Mr. Sortur served as Junior Manager, Finance and Accounting for Steel Authority of India, a large state-owned steel making company based in New Delhi, India. Mr. Sortur graduated from Osmania University with a bachelor's degree in accounting and is a Certified Public Accountant (CPA), Chartered Accountant (CA), and Certified Management Accountant (CMA).

Srini Murali is our President, Americas and APAC and served as Chief Operating Officer Americas and APAC from the Novitex Business Combination until January 2019. He is responsible for all sales, operations and business strategy functions across the Americas and Asia Pacific. Prior to the Novitex Business Combination, Mr. Murali served as Senior Vice President, Operations for the Americas and APAC regions for SourceHOV, creating global operating strategies, developing client relationships, and overseeing compliance. Mr. Murali has been a part of predecessor companies to SourceHOV since 1993. During his tenure, Mr. Murali has held analysis, product development, IT, and operational roles. In 2010, Mr. Murali took on a broader scope of responsibility as SourceHOV's Senior Vice President of Global Operations and IT. Mr. Murali has served in executive-level leadership roles at companies that preceded SourceHOV since 2007, when he was appointed Vice President of IT and Technology. Prior to these management roles,

Mr. Murali served as Director of Information Technology for Lason from 2002 to 2007, and as an Application Development Manager for Lason from 1998 to 2002. Before joining Lason, Mr. Murali worked as a Systems Engineer for Vetri Systems from 1996 to 1998. Mr. Murali graduated with a bachelor's degree in mathematics and statistics from Loyola College, Chennai, and earned an MBA from Davenport University, Michigan.

Vitalie Robu is our President, EMEA and served as Chief Operating Officer, EMEA from the Novitex Business Combination until January 2019. Mr. Robu is responsible for all sales, operations and business strategy functions across Europe, Middle East and Africa. Mr. Robu specializes in transaction processing services, technology products, and software solutions, and has over 20 years of international management experience in the private and public sectors. Prior to the Novitex Business Combination, he served as Senior Vice President, Operations for the European region of SourceHOV from 2014. From 2010 to 2014, Mr. Robu held the position of President and Executive Director of DataForce UK, a business process outsourcing and software provider that was part of SourceHOV. Prior to joining the SourceHOV group, Mr. Robu served as Manager of Investment and Insurance Products for Citibank EMEA in London from 2007 to 2010. Mr. Robu has degrees in International Relations from the National School for Political Studies, Bucharest and Physics from the State University of Moloves, and earned an MBA from IMD - International Institute for Management Development, Lausanne.

ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS

In addition to the other information contained in this Annual Report, the following risks impact our business and operations. These risk factors are not exhaustive and all investors are encouraged to perform their own investigation with respect to our business, financial condition and prospects.

Risks Related to our Business

Our results of operations could be adversely affected by economic and political conditions, creating complex risks, many of which are beyond our control.

Our business depends on the continued demand for our services, and, if current global economic conditions worsen, our business could be adversely affected by our customers' financial condition and level of business activity. Along with our customers we are subject to global political, economic and market conditions, including inflation, interest rates, energy costs, the impact of natural disasters, military action and the threat of terrorism. In particular, we currently derive, and are likely to continue to derive, a significant portion of revenues from customers located in North America and Europe. Any future decreases in the general level of economic activity in this markets, such as decreases in business and consumer spending and increases in unemployment rates, could result in a decrease in demand for our services, thus reducing our revenue. For example, certain customers may decide to reduce or postpone their spending on the services we provide, and we may be forced to lower our prices. Other developments in response to economic events, such as consolidations, restructurings or reorganizations, particularly involving our customers, could also cause the demand for our services to decline, negatively affecting the amount of business that we are able to obtain or retain. We may not be able to predict the impact such conditions will have on the industries we serve and may be unable to plan effectively for or respond to such impact. In response to economic and market conditions, from time to time we have undertaken or may undertake initiatives to reduce our cost structure where appropriate, such as consolidation of resources to provide functional region-wide support to our international subsidiaries in a centralized fashion. These initiatives, as well as any future workforce and facilities reductions we may implement, may not be sufficient to meet current and future changes in economic and market conditions and allow us to continue to achieve the growth rates expected. In addition, costs actually incurred in connection with certain restructuring actions may be higher than our estimates of such costs and/or may not lead to the anticipated cost savings.

Additionally, major political events, including the planned withdrawal of the United Kingdom from the European Union on March 29, 2019 ("Brexit"), continue to create uncertainty on topics that are relevant to our operations in the United Kingdom, such as immigration laws and employment laws, trade agreements and privacy laws. We are currently examining the various possible impacts Brexit may have on our business and operating model in an effort to develop solutions to address any of the potential outcomes. In addition, it is possible that Brexit may adversely affect global economic conditions and financial markets, to greater extent than we have currently anticipated.

In addition, any future disruptions or turbulence in the global credit markets may adversely affect our liquidity and financial condition, and the liquidity and financial condition of our customers. Such disruptions may limit our ability to access financing, increase the cost of financing needed to meet liquidity needs and affect the ability of our customers to use credit to purchase our services or to make timely payments to us, adversely affecting our financial condition and results of operations.

Cybersecurity issues, vulnerabilities, and criminal activity resulting in a data or security breach could result in risks to our systems, networks, products, solutions and services resulting in liability or reputational damage.

We collect and retain large volumes of internal and customer data, including personally identifiable information and other sensitive data both physically and electronically, for business purposes, and our various information technology systems enter, process, summarize and report such data. We also maintain personally identifiable information about our employees. Safeguarding customer, employee and our own data is a key priority for us, and our customers and employees have come to rely on us for the protection of their personal information. Augmented vulnerabilities, threats and more sophisticated and targeted cyber-related attacks pose a risk to our security and the security of our customers, partners, suppliers and third-party service providers, and to the confidentiality, availability and integrity of data owned by us or our customers. Despite our efforts to protect sensitive, confidential or personal data or information, we may be vulnerable to material security breaches, theft, misplaced or lost data, programming errors, employee errors and/or malfeasance that could potentially lead to the compromise of sensitive, confidential or personal data or information, improper use of our systems, software solutions or networks, unauthorized access, use, disclosure, modification or destruction of information, defective products, production downtimes and operational disruptions. Despite protective measures, we may not be successful in preventing security breaches which compromise the confidentiality and integrity of this data. While an attempt is made to mitigate these risks by employing a number of measures, including employee training, monitoring and testing, and maintenance of protective systems and contingency plans, we remain vulnerable to such threats.

The sensitive, confidential or personal data or information that we have access to is also subject to privacy and security laws, regulations or customer-imposed controls. The regulatory environment, as well as the requirements imposed on us by the industries we serve governing information, security and privacy laws is increasingly demanding. Maintaining compliance with applicable security and privacy regulations may increase our operating costs and/or adversely impact our ability to provide services to our customers. Furthermore, a compromised data system or the intentional, inadvertent or negligent release or disclosure of data could result in theft, loss, fraudulent or unlawful use of customer, employee or our data which could harm our reputation or result in remedial and other costs, fines or lawsuits. In addition, a cyber-related attack could result in other negative consequences, including damage to our reputation or competitiveness, remediation or increased protection costs, litigation or regulatory action. Fraud, employee negligence, unauthorized access, including, without limitation, malfunctions, viruses and other events beyond our control, may lead to the misappropriation or unauthorized disclosure of sensitive or confidential information we process, store and transmit, including personal information, for our customers, failure to prevent or mitigate data loss or other security breaches, including breaches of our vendors' technology and systems, could expose us or our customers to a risk of loss or misuse of such information, adversely affect our operating results, result in litigation or potential liability for us and otherwise harm our business. As a result, we may be subject to monetary damages, regulatory enforcement actions or fines under federal legislation, such as, the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act and HIPAA, as well as various states laws or under the GDPR in Europe. Similarly, regulations such as the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act provisions of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 expand the obligations of "covered entities" and their business associates, including certain mandatory breach notification requirements. In addition to any legal liability, data or security breaches may lead to negative publicity, reputational damage and otherwise adversely affect the results of our operations.

Our industry may be adversely impacted by a negative public reaction in the U.S. and elsewhere to providing certain of our services from outside the U.S. and recently proposed related legislation.

We have based our strategy of future growth on certain assumptions regarding our industry and future demand in the market for the provision of business process solutions in part using offshore resources. However, providing services from offshore locations is a politically sensitive topic in the U.S. and elsewhere, and many organizations and

public figures have publicly expressed concern about a perceived association between offshore service providers and the loss of jobs in their home countries. In addition, there has been limited publicity about the negative experience of certain companies that provide their services offshore, particularly in India. The trend of providing business process solutions offshore may not continue and could reverse if companies elect to develop and perform their business processes internally or are discouraged from transferring these services to offshore service providers. Any slowdown or reversal of existing industry trends could negatively affect the amount of business that we are able to obtain or retain.

A variety of U.S. federal and state legislation has been proposed that, if enacted, could restrict or discourage U.S. companies from providing their services from outside the U.S., including recently introduced proposals for providing tax and other economic incentives for companies that create jobs in the U.S. by reducing their reliance on offshore locations. Other state bills have proposed requiring offshore service providers to disclose their geographic locations, requiring notice to individuals whose personal information is disclosed to non-U.S. affiliates or subcontractors, requiring disclosures of companies' foreign outsourcing practices or restricting U.S. private sector companies that have government contracts, grants or guaranteed loan programs from providing their services. Because most of our customers are located in the U.S., any expansion of existing laws or the enactment of new legislation that constrains our ability to provide our solutions from offshore or otherwise makes using our services unappealing or impractical for our customers could have a material and adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flows.

The HGM Group has significant influence over us and our corporate governance.

The HGM Group beneficially owns over 50% of our Common Stock. As long as the HGM Group owns or controls a significant percentage of outstanding voting power, it will have the ability to strongly influence all corporate actions requiring stockholder approval, including the election and removal of directors and the size of our board of directors, any amendment of our certificate of incorporation or bylaws, or the approval of any merger or other significant corporate transaction, including a sale of substantially all of our assets. In addition, pursuant to the terms of the Director Nomination Agreement, the HGM Group (as well as Novitex Holdings) have certain nomination rights with respect to our board of directors and consent rights over certain of our corporate actions.

Additionally, the HGM Group's interests may not align with the interests of our other stockholders. The HGM Group is in the business of making investments in companies and may acquire and hold interests in businesses that compete directly or indirectly with us. The HGM Group may also pursue acquisition opportunities that may be complementary to our business, and, as a result, those acquisition opportunities may not be available to us. In addition, our certificate of incorporation provides that we renounce any interest or expectancy in the business opportunities of the HGM Group and that it shall not have any obligation to offer to us those opportunities unless presented to one of our directors or officers in his or her capacity as a director or officer of Exela.

Certain services we provide to customers in our public sector vertical may be subject to additional restrictions or limitations.

Our engagements with entities in the public sector, including educational institutions, may be subject to compliance with additional legislative or regulatory requirements. Certain state and local governments and agencies have adopted, or may in the future adopt, legislation or rules imposing additional requirements on services provided to the public sector, including restrictions as to where certain services can be performed or where certain data can be stored, even within the U.S. Additionally, our employees who are staffed on certain public sector engagements may be subject to strict background checks or other certifications. These additional requirements may make it more difficult to staff large public sector engagements, require us to turn down new engagements, affect our ability to meet customer expectations, deadlines or other specifications and otherwise increase our costs or decrease our revenues. Further, there can be no assurances that a public sector entity will not face funding shortages or reallocate funding for our services to other priorities, either prior to or after we have begun to perform our services, which could impact whether we are fully compensated for our services and could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flows.

Certain of our contracts are subject to termination rights, audits and/or investigations, which, if exercised, could negatively impact our reputation and reduce our ability to compete for new contracts and have an adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Many of our customer contracts may be terminated by our customers without cause and without any fee or penalty, with only limited notice. Any failure to meet a customer's expectations, as well as factors beyond our control, including a customer's financial condition, strategic priorities, or mergers and acquisitions, could result in a cancellation or non-renewal of such a contract or a decrease in business provided to us and cause our actual results to differ from our forecasts. We may not be able to replace any customer that elects to terminate or not renew its contract with us, which would reduce our revenues.

In addition, a portion of our revenues is derived from contracts with the U.S. federal and state government and their agencies and from contracts with foreign governments and their agencies. Government entities typically finance projects through appropriated funds. While these projects are often planned and executed as multi-year projects, government entities usually reserve the right to change the scope of or terminate these projects for lack of approved funding and/or at their convenience. Changes in government or political developments, including budget deficits, shortfalls or uncertainties, government spending reductions (e.g., \ during a government shutdown) or other debt or funding constraints, such as those recently experienced in the U.S. and Europe, could result in lower governmental sales and in our projects being reduced in price or scope or terminated altogether, which also could limit our recovery of incurred costs, reimbursable expenses and profits on work completed prior to the termination. The public procurement environment is unpredictable and this could adversely affect our ability to perform work under new and existing contracts. Also, our government business is subject to the risk that one or more of our potential contracts or contract extensions may be diverted by the contracting agency to a small or disadvantaged or minority-owned business pursuant to set-aside programs administered by the Small Business Administration, or may be bundled into large multiple award contracts for very large businesses. These risks can potentially have an adverse effect on our revenue growth and profit margins.

If the government finds that it inappropriately charged any costs to a contract, the costs are not reimbursable or, if already reimbursed, the cost must be refunded to the government. Additionally, if the government discovers improper or illegal activities or contractual non-compliance (including improper billing), we may be subject to various civil and criminal penalties and administrative sanctions, which may include termination of contracts, forfeiture of profits, suspension of payments, fines and suspensions or debarment from doing business with the government. Any resulting penalties or sanctions could materially adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition. Moreover, government contracts are generally subject to audits and investigations by government agencies. Further, the negative publicity that could arise from any such penalties, sanctions or findings in such audits or investigations could have an adverse effect on our reputation in the industry and reduce our ability to compete for new contracts and could materially adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

Our services and facilities may be impacted by terrorism, natural disasters and other disruptions, resulting in an adverse effect on our profitability and financial condition.

Our ability to provide services may be impacted or disrupted as a result of natural disasters, technical disruptions (including power outage and telecommunications failure), man-made events (including cyber-attacks, war and terrorist attacks), and global health risks or pandemics, as well as the threat or perceived threat of any of these events in the U.S. or any of the locations in which we operate. A significant portion of our employees and key operations centers are located in India and the Philippines, with, particularly in India, limited diversification or redundancy. India and the Philippines are particularly susceptible to natural disasters, including typhoons, tsunamis, floods and earthquakes, and the Philippines is additionally susceptible to volcanic eruptions. Our operations in these locations, as well as certain other countries outside of the U.S., are also at greater risk of disruptions in electricity, other public utilities or network services due to substandard infrastructure. Although all of our operations centers have disaster management plans, certain disaster management facilities, particularly in India, may not be adequate to protect against potential disruptions due to natural or other disasters. Damage, destruction or disruptions, including to our MegaCenters, could make it difficult or impossible for employees to reach our business locations or otherwise interrupt our ability to provide our services. Sustained periods of interruption in our services could adversely affect our reputation and

relationships with our customers, cause us to incur substantial expenses and expose us to liability. Our insurance coverage may not be sufficient to cover all of our potential losses and our business, results of operation and financial condition could be adversely affected.

Any disruption related to our U.S. data centers or MegaCenters due to any of the foregoing events may cause significant disruptions in our ability to provide our services to our customers and result in a material adverse effect on our reputation, results of operations and financial condition and our business, results of operations and financial condition could be adversely affected.

Although we believe that our insurance coverage with respect to disruptive events is reasonable, significant events such as acts of war and terrorism, economic conditions, judicial decisions, legislation, natural disasters and large losses could materially affect our insurance obligations and future expense.

Our executives, senior management team and other key personnel are critical to our continued success and the loss of such personnel, or an inability to attract, engage, retain and integrate our executives and other key employees could harm our business.

Our future success substantially depends on the continued service and performance of our executives, senior management team, as well as other key individuals in senior leadership positions. These personnel possess business and technical capabilities that are difficult to replace. The loss of any of our key personnel, particularly to competitors, may adversely affect our ability to effectively manage our current operations or meet ongoing and future business challenges. Further, identifying, developing internally or hiring externally, training and retraining highly-skilled managerial, technical, sales and services, finance and marketing personnel are critical to our future. Failure to successfully hire executives and key employees or the loss of any executives and key employees could have a significant impact on our operations.

Our business, financial position, and results of operations could be harmed by adverse rating actions by credit rating agencies.

If the credit ratings of our outstanding indebtedness are downgraded, or if rating agencies indicate that a downgrade may occur, our business, financial position, and results of operations could be adversely affected and perceptions of our financial strength could be damaged. A downgrade would have the effect of increasing our borrowing costs, and could decrease the availability of funds we are able to borrow, adversely affecting our business, financial position, and results of operations. In addition, a downgrade could adversely affect our relationships with our customers.

Our management team has limited experience managing a public company.

Most members of our management team have limited experience managing a publicly traded company, interacting with public company investors and complying with the increasingly complex laws pertaining to public companies. Our management team may not successfully or efficiently manage the next stages of our transition to being a public company subject to significant regulatory oversight and reporting obligations under the federal securities laws and the scrutiny of securities analysts and investors. These new obligations and constituents will require significant attention from our management team and could divert their attention away from the day-to-day management of our business, which could materially adversely affect our business, financial condition and operating results.

The requirements of being a public company may strain our resources, divert management's attention and affect our ability to attract and retain qualified board members.

As a public company, we are subject to the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act, the listing requirements of the Nasdaq and other applicable securities rules and regulations. Compliance with these rules and regulations will increase our legal and financial compliance costs, make some activities more difficult, time-consuming or costly, and increase demand on our systems and resources, particularly as we are no longer an emerging growth company. Among other things, the Exchange Act requires that we file annual, quarterly and current reports with respect to our business and operating results and maintain effective disclosure controls and procedures and internal control over financial reporting. In order to maintain and, if required, improve our disclosure controls and procedures and internal control over financial reporting to meet this standard, significant resources and management oversight may be required. As a result, management's attention may be diverted from other business concerns, which could harm our business and operating results. Although we have already hired additional employees to comply with these requirements, we may need to hire even more employees in the future, which will increase our costs and expenses.

In addition, changing laws, regulations and standards relating to corporate governance and public disclosure are creating uncertainty for public companies, increasing legal and financial compliance costs and making some activities more time consuming. These laws, regulations, and standards are subject to varying interpretations, in many cases due to their lack of specificity, and, as a result, their application in practice may evolve over time as new guidance is provided by regulatory and governing bodies. This could result in continuing uncertainty regarding compliance matters and higher costs necessitated by ongoing revisions to disclosure and governance practices. We intend to invest resources to comply with evolving laws, regulations and standards, and this investment may result in increased general and administrative expense and a diversion of management's time and attention from revenue-generating activities to compliance activities. If our efforts to comply with new laws, regulations and standards differ from the activities intended by regulatory or governing bodies, regulatory authorities may initiate legal proceedings against us and our business may be harmed.

As a result of being a public company and these new rules and regulations, it is more expensive for us to obtain director and officer liability insurance, and in the future we may be required to accept reduced coverage or incur substantially higher costs to obtain coverage. These factors could also make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified members of our board of directors, particularly to serve on our audit committee and compensation committee, and qualified executive officers.

If we fail to maintain an effective system of disclosure controls and internal control over financial reporting, our ability to produce timely and accurate financial statements or comply with applicable regulations could be impaired.

As a public company, we are subject to the reporting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as amended (the "Sarbanes-Oxley Act"), and the listing standards of the Nasdaq Stock Market. We expect that the requirements of these rules and regulations will continue to increase our legal, accounting and financial compliance costs, make some activities more difficult, time consuming and costly, and place significant strain on our personnel, systems and resources.

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires, among other things, that we maintain effective disclosure controls and procedures and internal control over financial reporting. We are continuing to develop and refine our disclosure controls and other procedures that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by us in the reports that we will file with the SEC is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in SEC rules and forms, and that information required to be disclosed in reports under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to our principal executive and financial officers. We are also continuing to improve our internal control over financial reporting. In order to maintain and improve the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures and internal control over financial reporting, we have expended, and anticipate that we will continue to expend, significant resources, including accounting-related costs and significant management oversight.

Our current controls and any new controls that we develop may become inadequate because of changes in conditions in our business. Further, weaknesses in our disclosure controls or our internal control over financial reporting may be discovered in the future. Any failure to develop or maintain effective controls, or any difficulties encountered in their implementation or improvement, could harm our operating results or cause us to fail to meet our reporting obligations and may result in a restatement of our financial statements for prior periods. Any failure to implement and maintain effective internal control over financial reporting also could adversely affect the results of management evaluations of our internal control over financial reporting that we are required to include in our periodic reports that we file with the SEC. Ineffective disclosure controls and procedures and internal control over financial reporting could also cause investors to lose confidence in our reported financial and other information, which would likely have a negative effect on the trading price of our common stock. In addition, if we are unable to continue to meet these requirements, we may not be able to remain listed on the Nasdaq Stock Market.

Any failure to maintain effective disclosure controls and internal control over financial reporting could have a material and adverse effect on our business and operating results and cause a decline in the price of our common stock.

Elevated levels of leverage may harm our financial condition and results of operations.

As of December 31, 2018, we had approximately $1.3 billion of long-term debt, excluding current maturities. We and our subsidiaries may incur additional indebtedness in the future. Our indebtedness could: decrease our ability to obtain additional financing for working capital, capital expenditures, general corporate or other purposes; limit our flexibility to make acquisitions; increase our cash requirements to support the payment of interest; limit our flexibility in planning for, or reacting to, changes in our business and our industry; and increase our vulnerability to adverse changes in general economic and industry conditions. Our ability to make payments of principal and interest on our indebtedness depends upon our future performance, which will be subject to general economic conditions and financial, business and other factors affecting our consolidated operations, many of which are beyond our control. In addition, if our outstanding senior notes are downgraded to below investment grade, we may incur additional interest expense. If we are unable to generate sufficient cash flow from operations in the future to service our debt and meet our other cash requirements, we may be required, among other things: to seek additional financing in the debt or equity markets; to refinance or restructure all or a portion of our indebtedness; or to reduce or delay planned capital or operating expenditures. Such measures might not be sufficient to enable us to service our debt and meet our other cash requirements. In addition, any such financing, refinancing or sale of assets might not be available at all or on economically favorable terms.

If we are unable to successfully consummate acquisitions or experience delays in integrating acquisitions, it could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

One of our strategies to grow our business is to opportunistically acquire complementary businesses, technologies and services such as Asterion Group International in 2018. This strategy depends in large part on our ability to find suitable acquisitions and finance them on acceptable terms. We may require additional debt or equity financing for future acquisitions, and doing so will be made more difficult by our indebtedness. Raising additional capital for acquisitions through debt financing could result in increased interest expense and may involve agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take certain actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends. .

If we are unable to identify and acquire suitable acquisition candidates, we may experience slower growth. Further, we may face challenges in integrating any acquired business. These challenges include eliminating redundant operations, facilities and systems, coordinating management and personnel, retaining key employees, managing different corporate cultures and achieving cost reductions and cross-selling opportunities. Additionally, the acquisition and integration processes may disrupt our business and divert management attention and our resources. If we fail to successfully integrate acquired businesses, products, technologies and personnel, it could impair relationships with employees, clients and strategic partners, distract management attention from our core businesses, result in control failures and otherwise disrupt our ongoing business, any of which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. We also may not be able to retain key management and other critical employees after an acquisition. In addition, we may be required to record future charges for impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets resulting from such acquisitions.

If we are unable to attract, train and retain skilled professionals, including highly skilled technical personnel to satisfy customer demand and senior management to lead our business globally, our business and results of operations may be materially adversely affected.

Our success is dependent, in large part, on our ability to keep our supply of skilled professionals, including project managers, IT engineers and senior technical personnel, in balance with customer demand around the world and on our ability to attract and retain senior management with the knowledge and skills to lead our business globally. Each year, we must hire several hundred new professionals and retrain, retain, and motivate our workforce across the globe. Competition for skilled labor is intense and, in some jurisdictions in which we operate, there are more jobs for certain professionals than qualified persons to fill these jobs. Costs associated with recruiting and training professionals can be significant. If we are unable to hire or deploy employees with the needed skillsets or if we are unable to adequately equip our employees with the skills needed, this could materially adversely affect our business. Additionally, if we are unable to maintain an employee environment that is competitive and contemporary, it could have an adverse effect on engagement and retention, which may materially adversely affect our business. If more stringent labor laws become applicable to us or if a significant number of our employees unionize, our profitability may be adversely affected.

Increased labor costs due to competition, increased minimum wage or employee benefits costs (including various federal, state and local actions to increase minimum wages), unionization activity or other factors would adversely impact our cost of sales and operating expenses. For example, the State of California has passed regulations which increased minimum wage rates from $10.50 per hour to $11.00 per hour, that became effective January 1, 2018, and will gradually increase to $15.00 per hour by 2022. In addition, the federal government and a number of other states are evaluating various proposals to increase their respective minimum wage. As minimum wage rates increase, we may need to increase not only the wages of our minimum wage employees but also the wages paid to employees at wage rates that are above minimum wage. As a result, we anticipate that our labor costs will continue to increase.

We are also subject to applicable rules and regulations relating to our relationship with our employees, including minimum wage and break requirements, health benefits, unemployment and sales taxes, overtime, and working conditions and immigration status. Legislated increases in the minimum wage and increases in additional labor cost components, such as employee benefit costs, workers' compensation insurance rates, compliance costs and fines, as well as the cost of litigation in connection with these regulations, would increase our labor costs. Unionizing and collective bargaining efforts have received increased attention nationwide in recent periods. While a small number of our employees belong to unions, should our employees become represented by unions, we would be obligated to bargain with those unions with respect to wages, hours, and other terms and conditions of employment, which is likely to increase our labor costs. Moreover, as part of the process of union organizing and collective bargaining, strikes and other work stoppages may occur, which would cause disruption to our business. Similarly, many employers nationally in similar environments have been subject to actions brought by governmental agencies and private individuals under wage-hour laws on a variety of claims, such as improper classification of workers as exempt from overtime pay requirements and failure to pay overtime wages properly, with such actions sometimes brought as class actions. These actions can result in material liabilities and expenses. Should we be subject to employment litigation, such as actions involving wage-hour, overtime, break, and working time, we may distract our management from business matters and result in increased labor costs. If costs of labor increase significantly, our business, results of operations, and financial condition may be adversely affected.

We may not always offset increased costs with increased fees under long-term contracts.

The pricing and other terms of our customer contracts, particularly our long-term contact center agreements, are based on estimates and assumptions we make at the time we enter into these contracts. These estimates reflect our best judgments regarding the nature of the engagement and our expected costs to provide the contracted services and could differ from actual results. Not all our larger long-term contracts allow for escalation of fees as our cost of operations increase and those that allow for such escalations do not always allow increases at rates comparable to increases that we experience. If and where we cannot negotiate long-term contract terms that provide for fee adjustments to reflect increases in our cost of service delivery, our business, financial conditions, and results of operation would be materially impacted.

Our business process automation solutions often require long selling cycles and long implementation periods that may result in significant upfront expenses that may not be recovered.

We often face long selling cycles to secure new contracts for our business process automation solutions. If we are successful in obtaining an engagement, the selling cycle can be followed by a long implementation period during which we plan our services in detail and demonstrate to the customer our ability to successfully integrate our solutions with the customer's internal operations. Our customers may experience delays in obtaining internal approvals or delays associated with technology or system implementations which can further lengthen the selling cycle or implementation period, and certain engagements may also require a ramping up period after implementation before we can commence providing our services. Even if we succeed in developing a relationship with a potential customer and begin to discuss the services in detail, the potential customer may choose a competitor or decide to retain the work in-house prior to the

time a contract is signed. In addition, once a contract is signed, we sometimes do not begin to receive revenue until completion of the implementation period and our solution is fully operational. The extended lengths of our selling cycles and implementation periods can result in the incurrence of significant upfront expenses that may never result in profits or may result in profits only after a significant period of time has elapsed, which may negatively impact our financial performance. For example, we generally hire new employees to provide services in connection with certain large engagements once a new contract is signed. Accordingly, we may incur significant costs associated with these hires before we collect corresponding revenues. Our inability to obtain contractual commitments after a selling cycle, maintain contractual commitments after the implementation period or limit expenses prior to the receipt of corresponding revenue may have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

We face significant competition from U.S.-based and non-U.S.-based companies and from our customers who may elect to perform their business processes in-house.

Our industry is highly competitive, fragmented and subject to rapid change. We compete primarily against large multi-national information technology companies, focused BPO companies based in offshore locations, BPO divisions of information technology companies located in India, other BPO and consulting providers that focus on the legal sector and the in-house capabilities of our customers and potential customers. These competitors may include entrants from adjacent industries or entrants in geographic locations with lower costs than those in which we operate.

We believe that the principal competitive factors in our markets are breadth and depth of process expertise, knowledge of industries served, service quality, scalability of solutions, the ability to attract, train and retain qualified people, compliance rigor, global delivery capabilities, outcome-based pricing and sales and customer management capabilities. Some of our competitors have greater financial, marketing, technological or other resources, larger customer bases and more established reputations or brand awareness than we do. In addition, some of our competitors who do not have, or have limited, global delivery capabilities may expand their delivery centers to the countries in which we operate or increase our capacity in lower cost geographies, which could result in increased competition. Some of our competitors may also enter into strategic or commercial relationships among themselves or with larger, more established companies in order to benefit from increased scale and enhanced scope capabilities or enter into similar arrangements with potential customers. Further, we expect competition to intensify in the future as more companies enter our markets and customers consolidate the services they require among fewer vendors. Increased competition, our inability to compete successfully against competitors, pricing pressures or loss of market share could result in reduced operating margins, which could adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Our industry is characterized by rapid technological change and failure to compete successfully within the industry and address rapid technological change could adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

The process of developing new services and solutions is inherently complex and uncertain. It requires accurate anticipation of customers' changing needs and emerging technological trends. We must make long-term investments and commit significant resources before knowing whether these investments will eventually result in services that achieve customer acceptance and generate the revenues required to provide desired returns. If we fail to accurately anticipate and meet our customers' needs through the development of new technologies and service offerings or if our new services are not widely accepted, we could lose market share and customers to our competitors and that could materially adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

More specifically, the business process solutions industry is characterized by rapid technological change, evolving industry standards and changing customer preferences. The success of our business depends, in part, upon our ability to develop technology and solutions that keep pace with changes in our industry and the industries of our customers. Although we have made, and will continue to make, significant investments in the research, design and development of new technology and platforms-driven solutions, we may not be successful in addressing these changes on a timely basis or in marketing the changes we implement. In addition, products or technologies developed by others may render our services uncompetitive or obsolete. Failure to address these developments could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

In addition, existing and potential customers are actively shifting their businesses away from paper-based environments to electronic environments with reduced needs for physical document management and processing. This shift may result in decreased demand for the physical document management services we provide such that our business and revenues may become more reliant on technology-based services in electronic environments, which are typically provided at lower prices compared to physical document management services. Though we have solutions for customers seeking to make these types of transitions, a significant shift by our customers away from physical documents to non-paper based technologies, whether now existing or developed in the future, could adversely affect our business, results of operation and financial condition.

Also, some of the large international companies in the industry have significant financial resources and compete with us to provide document processing services and/or business process services. We compete primarily on the basis of technology, performance, price, quality, reliability, brand, distribution and customer service and support. Our success in future performance is largely dependent upon our ability to compete successfully, to promptly and effectively react to changing technologies and customer expectations and to expand into additional market segments. To remain competitive, we must develop services and applications; periodically enhance our existing offerings; remain cost efficient; and attract and retain key personnel and management. If we are unable to compete successfully, we could lose market share and important customers to our competitors and that could materially adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

We rely, in some cases, on third-party hardware and software, which could cause errors or failures of our services and could also result in adverse effects for our business and reputation if these third-party services fail to perform properly or are no longer available.

Although we developed our platform-driven solutions internally, we rely, in some cases, on third-party hardware and software in connection with our service offerings which we either purchase or lease from third-party vendors. We are generally able to select from a number of competing hardware and software applications, but the complexity and unique specifications of the hardware or software makes design defects and software errors difficult to detect. Any errors or defects in third-party hardware or software incorporated into our service offerings, may result in a delay or loss of revenue, diversion of resources, damage to our reputation, the loss of the affected customer, loss of future business, increased service costs or potential litigation claims against us.

Further, this hardware and software may not continue to be available on commercially reasonable terms or at all. Any loss of the right to use any of this hardware or software could result in delays in the provisioning of our services, which could negatively affect our business until equivalent technology is either developed by us or, if available, is identified, obtained and integrated. In addition, it is possible that our hardware vendors or the licensors of third-party software could increase the prices they charge, which could have a material adverse impact on our results of operations. Further, changing hardware vendors or software licensors could detract from management's ability to focus on the ongoing operations of our business or could cause delays in the operations of our business.

Some of the work we do involves greater risks than other types of claims processing or document management engagements.

We provide certain business process solutions for customers that, for financial, legal or other reasons, may present higher risks compared to other types of claims processing or document management engagements. Examples of higher risk engagements include, but are not limited to:

- class action and other legal distributions involving significant sums of money;
- economic analysis and expert testimony in high stakes legal matters; and
- engagements where we receive or process sensitive data, including personal consumer or private health information.

While we attempt to identify higher risk engagements and customers and mitigate our exposure by taking certain preventive measures and, where necessary, turning down certain engagements, these efforts may be ineffective and an actual or alleged error or omission on our part, the part of our customer or other third parties or possible fraudulent activity in one or more of these higher-risk engagements could result in the diversion of management resources, damage to our reputation, increased service costs or impaired market acceptance of our services, any of which could negatively impact our business and our financial condition.

We encounter professional conflicts of interest.

We encounter professional conflicts of interest, particularly in our provision of expert witness testimony in certain of our legal engagement services. Although we have systems and procedures to identify potential conflicts of interest prior to accepting a new engagement, there is no guarantee that all potential conflicts of interest will be identified, and undetected conflicts may result in damage to our reputation and result in professional liability, which may adversely impact our business and results of operations. If we are unable to accept new engagements for any reason, including business and legal conflicts, our professionals may become underutilized or discontented, which may adversely affect our future revenues and results of operations, as well as our ability to retain these professionals.

New, more stringent privacy and data security regulations may have a negative impact on our business.

Any inability to adequately address privacy and security concerns could result in expenses and liability, and adverse impact on us. Moreover, international privacy and data security regulations may become more complex and have greater consequences. For instance, as of May 25, 2018, the General Data Protection Regulation, or GDPR, has replaced the Data Protection Directive with respect to the collection and use of personal data of data subjects in the EU. The GDPR applies extra territorially and imposes several stringent requirements for controllers and processors of personal data, including, for example, higher standards for obtaining consent from individuals to process their personal data, more robust disclosures to individuals and a strengthened individual data rights regime, shortened timelines for data breach notifications, limitations on retention of information, increased requirements pertaining to health data, other special categories of personal data and pseudonymised (i.e., key-coded) data and additional obligations when we contract third-party processors in connection with the processing of the personal data. The GDPR provides that EU member states may make their own further laws and regulations limiting the processing of personal data, including genetic, biometric or health data, which could limit our ability to use and share personal data or could cause our costs could increase, and harm our business and financial condition. Failure to comply with the requirements of GDPR and the applicable national data protection laws of the EU Member States may result in fines of up to €20,000,000 or up to 4% of the total worldwide annual turnover of the preceding financial year, whichever is higher, and other administrative penalties. Further, as the GDPR has recently come into effect, enforcement priorities and interpretation of certain provisions are still unclear. Industry groups also impose self-regulatory standards that bind us by their incorporation into the contracts we execute. For example, should we fail to be compliant with the PCIDSS we may be subject to fines and other penalties.

Our business could be materially and adversely affected if we do not protect our intellectual property or if our services are found to infringe on the intellectual property of others.

Our success depends in part on certain methodologies and practices we utilize in developing and implementing applications and other proprietary intellectual property rights. In order to protect such rights, we rely upon a combination of nondisclosure and other contractual arrangements, as well as trade secret, copyright, trademark and patent laws. We also generally enter into confidentiality agreements with our employees, customers and potential customers and limit access to and distribution of our proprietary information. There can be no assurance that the laws, rules, regulations and treaties in effect in the U.S., India and the other jurisdictions in which we operate and the contractual and other protective measures we take are adequate to protect us from misappropriation or unauthorized use of our intellectual property, or that such laws will not change. There can be no assurance that the resources invested by us to protect our intellectual property will be sufficient or that our intellectual property portfolio will adequately deter misappropriation or improper use of our technology, and our intellectual property rights may not prevent competitors from independently developing or selling products and services similar to or duplicative of ours. We may not be able to detect unauthorized use and take appropriate steps to enforce our rights, and any such steps may be costly and unsuccessful. Infringement by others of our intellectual property, including the costs of enforcing our intellectual property rights, may have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition. We could also face competition in some countries where we have not invested in an intellectual property portfolio. If we are not able to protect our intellectual property, the value of our brand and other intangible assets may be diminished, and our business may be adversely affected. Further, although we believe that we are not infringing on the intellectual property rights of others, claims may nonetheless be successfully asserted against us in the future, and we may be the target of enforcement of patents by third parties, including aggressive and opportunistic enforcement claims by non-practicing entities. Regardless of the merit of such claims, responding to infringement claims can be expensive and time-consuming. If we are found to infringe any third-party rights, we could be required to pay substantial damages or we could be enjoined from offering some of our products and services. The costs of defending any such claims could be significant, and any successful claim may require us to modify our services. The value of, or our ability to use, our intellectual property may also be negatively impacted by dependencies on third parties, such as our ability to obtain or renew on reasonable terms licenses that we need in the future, or our ability to secure or retain ownership or rights to use data in certain software analytics or services offerings. Any such circumstances may have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

We generate a significant portion of our revenues from a small number of customers, and any loss of business from these customers could materially reduce our revenues.

We have derived, and believe that in the foreseeable future we will continue to derive, a significant portion of our revenues from a small number of customers. While we have no one customer that accounts for more than 10% of our revenue, for each of the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, our ten largest customers accounted for approximately 30% of our revenues.

Our ability to maintain close relationships with these and other major customers is essential to the growth and profitability of our business. However, the volume of work performed for a specific customer is likely to vary from year to year. A major customer in one year may not provide the same level of revenues for us in any subsequent year and there can be no assurance that any customer will extend or renew its contract with us. The business process solutions we provide to our customers, and the revenues and net income from those services, may decline or vary as the type and quantity of services we provide change over time. Furthermore, our reliance on any individual customer for a significant portion of our revenues may give that customer a certain degree of pricing leverage against us when negotiating contracts and terms of service.

In addition, a number of factors other than our performance could cause the loss of or reduction in business or revenues from a customer, and these factors are not predictable. For example, a customer may decide to reduce spending on business process solutions from us due to a challenging economic environment or other factors, both internal and external, relating to our business. These factors may include corporate restructuring, pricing pressure, changes to our outsourcing strategy, switching to another BPO provider or returning work in-house or other changes in a customer's prospects or profitability. The loss of any of our major customers, or a significant decrease in the volume of work they give to us or the price at which we are able to provide our services to them, could materially adversely affect our revenues and thus our results of operations.

Our revenues are highly dependent on a limited number of industries, and any decrease in demand for business process solutions in these industries could reduce our revenues and adversely affect the results of operations.

A substantial portion of our revenues are derived from three specific industry-based segments: ITPS, HS, and LLPS. Customers in ITPS accounted for 80.3% and 71.8% of our revenues in 2018 and 2017, respectively. Customers in HS accounted for 14.4% and 20.3% of our revenues in 2018 and 2017, respectively. Customers in LLPS accounted for 0.0% and 5.3% of our revenues in 2018 and 2017, respectively.

Our success largely depends on continued demand for our services from customers in these segments, and a downturn or reversal of the demand for business process solutions in any of these segments, or the introduction of regulations that restrict or discourage companies from engaging our services, could materially adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations. For example, consolidation in any of these industries or

combinations or mergers, particularly involving our customers, may decrease the potential number of customers for our services. We have been affected by the worsening of economic conditions and significant consolidation in the financial services industry, and continuation of this trend may negatively affect our revenues and profitability.

Our future profitability and ability to sustain positive cash flow is uncertain.

Our future profitability depends on, among other things, our ability to generate revenue in excess of our expenses. However, we have significant and continuing fixed costs relating to the maintenance of our assets and business, including debt service requirements, which we may not be able to reduce adequately to sustain our profitability if our revenue decreases. Our profitability also may be impacted by non-cash charges such as stock-based compensation charges and potential impairment of goodwill, which will negatively affect our reported financial results. Even if we achieve profitability on an annual basis, we may not be able to achieve profitability on a quarterly basis. You should not consider prior revenue growth as indicative of our future performance. In fact, in future quarters, we may not have any revenue growth or our revenue could decline. We may incur significant losses in the future for a number of reasons and risks described elsewhere herein and we may encounter unforeseen expenses, difficulties, complications, delays and other unknown events.

Our ability to continue to generate positive cash flow depends on our ability to generate collections from sales in excess of our cash expenditures. Our ability to generate and collect on sales can be negatively affected by many factors, including but not limited to our inability to convince new customers to use our services or existing customers to renew their contracts or use additional services; the lengthening of our sales cycles and implementation periods; changes in our customer mix; a decision by any of our existing customers to cease or reduce using our services; failure of customers to pay our invoices on a timely basis or at all; a failure in the performance of our solutions or internal controls that adversely affects our reputation or results in loss of business; the loss of market share to existing or new competitors; the failure to enter or succeed in new markets; regional or global economic conditions or regulations affecting perceived need for or value of our services; or our inability to develop new offerings, expand our offerings or drive adoption of our new offerings on a timely basis and thus potentially not meeting evolving market needs.

We anticipate that we will incur increased sales and marketing and general and administrative expenses as we continue to diversify our business into new industries and geographic markets. Our business will also require significant amounts of working capital to support our growth. We may not achieve collections from sales to offset these anticipated expenditures sufficient to maintain positive future cash flow. In addition, we may encounter unforeseen expenses, difficulties, complications, delays and other unknown events that cause our costs to exceed our expectations. An inability to generate positive cash flow may decrease our long-term viability.

We have a significant amount of intangible assets that could be materially impacted.

Goodwill and other intangible assets that have indefinite useful lives are not amortized but rather are evaluated annually for impairment and more frequently if a triggering event occurs. The valuation of goodwill for impairment involves a high degree of judgment. Based on our estimates and assumptions underlying the valuation, impairment is determined by estimating the fair value of a reporting unit and comparing that value to the reporting unit's book value. If economic events occur that cause us to revise our estimates and assumptions used in determining the fair value of our goodwill, such revisions could result in an impairment charge that could have a material adverse impact on our financial statements during the period incurred.

We derive significant revenue and profit from commercial and government contracts awarded through competitive bidding processes, including renewals, which can impose substantial costs on us, and we will not achieve revenue and profit objectives if we fail to accurately and effectively bid on such projects.

Many of these contracts are extremely complex and require the investment of significant resources in order to prepare accurate bids and proposals. Competitive bidding imposes substantial costs and presents a number of risks, including: (i) the substantial cost and managerial time and effort that we spend to prepare bids and proposals for contracts that may or may not be awarded to us; (ii) the need to estimate accurately the resources and costs that will be required to implement and service any contracts we are awarded, sometimes in advance of the final determination of their full scope and design; (iii) the expense and delay that may arise if our competitors protest or challenge awards made to us pursuant to competitive bidding and the risk that such protests or challenges could result in the requirement to resubmit bids and in the termination, reduction or modification of the awarded contracts; and (iv) the opportunity cost of not bidding on and winning other contracts we might otherwise pursue. If our competitors protest or challenge an award made to us on a government contract, the costs to defend such an award may be significant and could involve subsequent litigation that could take years to resolve.

Our profitability is dependent upon our ability to obtain adequate pricing for our services and to improve our cost structure.

Our success depends on our ability to obtain adequate pricing for our services. Depending on competitive market factors, future prices we obtain for our services may decline from previous levels. If we are unable to obtain adequate pricing for our services, it could materially adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition. In addition, our contracts are increasingly requiring tighter timelines for implementation as well as more stringent service level metrics. This makes the bidding process for new contracts much more difficult and requires us to adequately consider these requirements in the pricing of our services.

We regularly review our operations with a view towards reducing our cost structure, including, without limitation, reducing our employee base, exiting certain businesses, improving process and system efficiencies and outsourcing some internal functions. We, from time to time, engage in restructuring actions to reduce our cost structure. If we are unable to continue to maintain our cost base at or below the current level and maintain process and systems changes resulting from prior restructuring actions or to realize the expected cost reductions in the ongoing strategic transformation program, it could materially adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

In addition, in order to meet the service requirements of our customers, which often includes 24/7 service, and to optimize our employee cost base, including our back-office support, we often locate our delivery service and back-office support centers in lower-cost locations, including several developing countries. Concentrating our centers in these locations presents a number of operational risks, many of which are beyond our control, including the risks of political instability, natural disasters, safety and security risks, labor disruptions, excessive employee turnover and rising labor rates. Additionally, a change in the political environment in the U.S. or the adoption and enforcement of legislation and regulations curbing the use of such centers outside of the U.S. could materially adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition. These risks could impair our ability to effectively provide services to our customers and keep our costs aligned to our associated revenues and market requirements.

Our ability to sustain and improve profit margins is dependent on a number of factors, including our ability to continue to improve the cost efficiency of our operations through such programs as robotic process automation, to absorb the level of pricing pressures on our services through cost improvements and to successfully complete information technology initiatives. If any of these factors adversely materialize or if we are unable to achieve and maintain productivity improvements through restructuring actions or information technology initiatives, our ability to offset labor cost inflation and competitive price pressures would be impaired, each of which could materially adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

We are subject to regular customer and third-party security reviews and failure to pass these may have an adverse impact on our operations.

Many of our customer contracts require that we maintain certain physical and/or information security standards, and, in certain cases, we permit a customer to audit our compliance with these contractual standards. Any failure to meet such standards or pass such audits may have a material adverse impact on our business. Further, customers from time to time may require stricter physical and/or information security than they negotiated in their contracts, and may condition continued volumes and business on the satisfaction of such additional requirements. Some of these requirements may be expensive to implement or maintain, and may not be factored into our contract pricing. Further, on an annual basis we obtain third-party audits of certain of our locations in accordance with Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 16 (SSAE 16) put forth by the Auditing Standards Board (ASB) of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA). SSAE 16 is the current standard for reporting on controls at service organizations, and

many of our customers expect that we will perform an annual SSAE 16 audit, and report to them the results. Negative findings in such an audit and/or the failure to adequately remediate in a timely fashion such negative findings may cause customers to terminate their contracts or otherwise have a material adverse effect on our reputation, results of operation and financial condition.

Failure to adhere to the regulations that govern our business could have an adverse impact on our operations.

Our customers are often subject to regulations that may require that we comply with certain rules and regulations in performing services for them that would not otherwise apply to us. U.S. federal laws and regulations that apply to certain portions of our business include the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, HIPAA, and the HITECH Act of 2009. We must also comply with applicable regulations relating to healthcare and other personal information that we processes as part of our services. Due to our global delivery model, we are also subject to the burden and expense of complying with the laws and regulations of various jurisdictions and changes thereto which are beyond our control. In addition, our contracts with some of our customers require us to remain knowledgeable about and comply with a number of additional relevant consumer protection laws and other regulatory requirements. Failure to perform our services in a manner that complies with any such requirement could result in breaches of contracts with our customers. Our failure to comply with any applicable laws and regulations could subject us to civil fines and criminal penalties.

A significant portion of our assets and operations are located in India, the Philippines, China and Mexico, and we are subject to regulatory, economic and political uncertainties in those locations.

A significant number of our operations centers are located in India, the Philippines and China and a majority of our assets and our professionals are located in those locations. We intend to continue to develop and expand our facilities in these areas. Our financial performance may be adversely affected by general economic conditions and economic and fiscal policy in these countries, including changes in exchange rates and controls, interest rates and taxation policies, as well as social stability and political, economic or diplomatic developments affecting those countries in the future. These countries have experienced significant economic growth over the last several years, but face major challenges in sustaining that growth in the years ahead. These challenges include the need for substantial infrastructure development and improving access to healthcare and education. Our ability to recruit, train and retain qualified employees, develop and operate our operations centers, and attract and retain customers could be adversely affected if these countries do not successfully meet these challenges.

In the early 1990s, India experienced significant inflation, low growth in gross domestic product and shortages of foreign currency reserves. The Indian government, however, has exercised and continues to exercise significant influence over many aspects of the Indian economy. India's government has provided significant tax incentives and relaxed certain regulatory restrictions in order to encourage foreign investment in specified sectors of the economy, including the BPO industry. Certain of those programs that have benefited us include tax holidays, liberalized import and export duties and preferential rules on foreign investment and repatriation. We cannot assure you that liberalization policies will continue. Various factors, such as changes in the current federal government, could trigger significant changes in India's economic liberalization and deregulation policies and disrupt business and economic conditions in India generally and our business in particular.

The Philippines has experienced significant inflation, currency declines and shortages of foreign exchange. In addition, the Philippines has experienced and may continue to experience civil unrest, terrorism and political turmoil, resulting in temporary work stoppages and technology outages. These instabilities and any adverse changes in the political environment in the Philippines could increase our operational costs, increase our exposure to legal and business risks and make it more difficult for us to operate our business in the Philippines.

Our business operations in China may be adversely affected by our current and future political environment. The Chinese government can exert substantial influence and control over the manner in which companies in China conduct business. Under the current government leadership, the government of China has been pursuing economic reform policies that encourage private economic activity and greater economic decentralization. There is no assurance, however, that the government of China will continue to pursue these policies, or that it will not significantly alter these policies from time to time without notice.

Our ability to efficiently conduct our business activities in Mexico is subject to changes in government policy or shifts in political attitudes that are beyond our control. Government policy may change to discourage foreign investment, nationalization of industries may occur or other government limitations, restrictions or requirements not currently foreseen may be implemented. In addition, Mexico may experience political instability, which may result in outbreaks of civil unrest, drug-related violence, terrorist attacks or threats or acts of war in the affected areas, any of which could materially and adversely affect our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations.

Introduction of tax legislation and disputes with tax authorities may have an adverse effect on our operations and our overall tax rate.

Governments in countries in which we operate or provide services could enact new tax legislation that could have a material adverse effect on our overall effective tax rate. In addition, our ability to repatriate surplus earnings, if any, from our operations centers in a tax-efficient manner is dependent upon interpretations of local laws, possible changes in such laws and the renegotiation of existing double tax avoidance treaties. Changes to any of these may adversely affect our overall tax rate, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

In addition, the transfer pricing regulations of the U.S. and certain foreign jurisdictions, including India, require that any cross-border transaction involving related parties be at an arm's-length price. Accordingly, we base our pricing between our foreign subsidiaries and related parties on a functional and economic analysis involving benchmarking against transactions among entities that are not related. However, the tax authorities have jurisdiction to review our transfer-pricing policy. If they conclude the policy was not applied appropriately, we may incur additional tax liability, including accrued interest and penalties. As an example, we have previously received an adverse order from the Indian Tax Tribunal over the application of some of our transfer pricing policies. This decision may be overturned only by appeal to India's Supreme Court. However, it is highly uncertain the matter would ultimately be decided in our favor. Based on the adverse Indian tax tribunal's decision, advice from tax advisors, and the noted trend of Indian tax authorities aggressively pursuing higher transfer prices from multi-national companies, we believe it is probable that we may experience future assessments of tax, penalty and interest in connection with our Indian transfer-pricing policy. Accordingly, reserves have been established on our balance sheet. However, these reserves may not be sufficient. As we continue to expand our operations, we may be subject to similar liability/exposure in additional geographies/jurisdictions.

We may suffer increases in tax expenses and face uncertain future tax liabilities due to enactment of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act.

On December 22, 2017, new U.S. federal income tax legislation was enacted (the "Tax Cuts and Jobs Act" or "TCJA"). The TCJA, among other things, contains significant changes to U.S. federal corporate income taxation, including reduction of the U.S. federal corporate income tax rate from a top marginal rate of 35% to a flat rate of 21%, limitation of the tax deduction for interest expense to 30% of adjusted earnings (except for certain small businesses), limitation of the deduction for net operating losses to 80% of current year taxable income and elimination of net operating loss carrybacks for net operating losses arising after December 31, 2017, immediate deductions for certain new investments instead of deductions for depreciation expense over time, and creating, modifying or repealing many business deductions and credits. Federal net operating losses arising in taxable year ending after December 31, 2017 will be carried forward indefinitely pursuant to the TCJA.

For 2018 and beyond, the main known impact to our operations is the TCJA's limitations on interest expense deductions. We use significant leverage to finance our business and, therefore, we incur significant interest expense. We continue to examine the impact this tax reform legislation may have on our business. Notwithstanding the reduction in the corporate income tax rate, the overall impact of the TCJA is uncertain and our business and financial condition could be adversely affected.

Sales tax laws in the U.S. may change resulting in service providers having to collect sales taxes in states where the current laws do not require us to do so. This could result in substantial tax liabilities.

Our U.S. subsidiaries collect and remit sales tax in states in which the subsidiaries have physical presence or in which we believe sufficient nexus exists which obligates us to collect sales tax. Other states may, from time to time, claim that we have state-related activities constituting physical nexus to require such collection. Additionally, many other states seek to impose sales tax collection or reporting obligations on companies that sell goods to customers in their state, or directly to the state and its political subdivisions, regardless of physical presence. Such efforts by states have increased recently, as states seek to raise revenues without increasing the income tax burden on residents. We rely on U.S. Supreme Court decisions which hold that, without Congressional authority, a state may not enforce a sales tax collection obligation on a company that has no physical presence in the state. We cannot predict whether the nature or level of contacts we have with a particular state will be deemed enough to require us to collect sales tax in that state nor can we be assured that Congress or individual states will not approve legislation authorizing states to impose tax collection or reporting obligations on our activities. A successful assertion by one or more states that we should collect sales tax could result in substantial tax liabilities related to past sales and would result in considerable administrative burdens and costs for us.

Restrictions on entry visas may affect our ability to compete for and provide services to customers in the U.S., which could have a material adverse effect on future revenues.

A significant number of our employees are foreign nationals, including from India, the Philippines and China. Certain members of our development team based in India travel to the U.S. on a regular basis to facilitate new project development, including the implementation of new contracts and to meet our U.S. customers. The ability of these employees to travel to the U.S. and other countries in which we do business depends on the ability to obtain the necessary visas and entry permits.

In response to political forces, terrorist attacks, the global economic downturn, public sentiments of high unemployment rates in certain parts of the U.S. and other events, U.S. immigration authorities have increased the level of scrutiny in granting visas and applicable immigration laws may be subject to legislative change and varying standards of application and enforcement. We cannot predict the political or economic events that could affect immigration laws or any restrictive impact those events could have on obtaining or monitoring entry visas for our professionals.

Investors may have difficulty effecting service of process or enforcing judgments obtained in the U.S. against our non-U.S. subsidiaries.

We have significant operating subsidiaries that are organized outside the U.S. A portion of our assets are located in India, the Philippines, China, Mexico, and Canada. As a result, you may be unable to effect service of process upon our affiliates who reside in these jurisdictions. In addition, you may be unable to enforce against these persons outside the jurisdiction of their residence judgments obtained in U.S. courts, including judgments predicated solely upon U.S. federal securities laws.

Currency fluctuations among the Euro, British Pound, Indian rupee, the Philippine Peso, the Mexican Peso, the Canadian Dollar, the Chinese Yuan and the U.S. Dollar could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations.

We operate internationally and as a result, are subject to risks associated with doing business globally, such as risks related to the differing legal, political and regulatory requirements and economic conditions of many jurisdictions. Risks inherent to operating internationally include changes in a country's economic or political conditions, in foreign currency exchange rates, regulatory requirements and enforcement of intellectual property rights.

The functional currencies of our businesses outside of the U.S. are the local currencies. Changes in exchange rates between these foreign currencies and the U.S. Dollar will affect the recorded levels of our assets, liabilities, net sales, cost of goods sold and operating margins and could result in exchange gains or losses. The primary foreign currencies to which we have exposure are the European Union Euro, Swedish Krona, British Pound Sterling, Canadian

Dollar and Indian rupees. Exchange rates between these currencies and the U.S. Dollar in recent years have fluctuated significantly and may do so in the future. Our operating results and profitability may be affected by any volatility in currency exchange rates and our ability to manage effectively currency transaction and translation risks. To the extent the U.S. Dollar strengthens against foreign currencies, our foreign revenues and profits will be reduced when translated into U.S. Dollars.

Although the vast majority of our revenues are denominated in U.S. dollars, a significant portion of our expenses are incurred and paid in Euros, British Pound Sterling, Swedish Krona, Indian rupees, and to a lesser extent in other currencies, including the Philippine Peso, the Mexican Peso, the Canadian dollar and the Chinese Yuan. We report our financial results in U.S. Dollars. The exchange rate between the Indian rupee and the U.S. Dollar has changed substantially in recent years and may fluctuate substantially in the future. Our results of operations may be adversely affected if such fluctuations continue, or increase, or other currencies fluctuate significantly against the U.S. Dollar.

Although we do not currently take steps to hedge our foreign currency exposures, should we choose in the future to implement a hedging strategy, there can be no assurance that our hedging strategy will be successful or that the hedging markets would have sufficient liquidity or depth to allow us to implement such a hedging strategy in a cost-effective manner. Further, the success of any potential hedging strategy could be impacted by any failure by the hedging counterparties to meet their contractual obligations.

We are subject to laws of the United States and foreign jurisdictions relating to processing certain financial transactions, including payment card transactions and debit or credit card transactions, and failure to comply with those laws could subject us to legal actions and materially adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

We process, support and execute financial transactions, and disburse funds, on behalf of both government and commercial customers, often in partnership with financial institutions. This activity includes receiving debit and credit card information, processing payments for and due to our customers and disbursing funds on payment or debit cards to payees of our customers. As a result, the transactions we process may be subject to numerous United States (both federal and state) and foreign jurisdiction laws and regulations, including the Electronic Fund Transfer Act, as amended, the Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act of 1970 (commonly known as the Bank Secrecy Act), as amended, the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act of 2010 (including the so-called Durbin Amendment), as amended, the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act (also known as the Financial Modernization Act of 1999), as amended, and the Uniting and Strengthening America by Providing Appropriate Tools Required to Intercept and Obstruct Terrorism (USA PATRIOT ACT) Act of 2001, as amended. Other United States (both federal and state) and foreign jurisdiction laws apply to our processing of certain financial transactions and related support services. These laws are subject to frequent changes, and new statutes and regulations in this area may be enacted at any time. Changes to existing laws, the introduction of new laws in this area or failure to comply with existing laws that are applicable to us may subject us to, among other things, additional costs or changes to our business practices, liability for monetary damages, fines and/or criminal prosecution, unfavorable publicity, restrictions on our ability to process and support financial transactions and allegations by our customers, partners and clients that we have not performed our contractual obligations. Any of these could materially adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

Failure to comply with the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, or the FCPA, economic and trade sanctions, regulations, and similar laws could subject us to penalties and other adverse consequences.

We operate our business in several foreign countries with developing economies, where companies often engage in business practices that are prohibited by U.S. and other regulations applicable to us. We are subject to anti-corruption laws and regulations, including the FCPA, the U.K. Bribery Act and other laws that prohibit the making or offering of improper payments to foreign government officials and political figures, including ant bribery provisions enforced by the Department of Justice and accounting provisions enforced by the SEC. These laws prohibit improper payments or offers of payments to foreign governments and their officials and political parties by the U.S. and other business entities for the purpose of obtaining or retaining business. We have implemented policies to identify and address potentially impermissible transactions under such laws and regulations; however, there can be no assurance that all of our and our subsidiaries' employees, consultants, and agents, including those that may be based in or from

countries where practices that violate U.S. or other laws may be customary, will not take actions in violation of our policies, for which we may be ultimately responsible.

We are also subject to certain economic and trade sanctions programs that are administered by the Department of Treasury's Office of Foreign Assets Control, or OFAC, which prohibit or restrict transactions to or from or dealings with specified countries, their governments, and in certain circumstances, their nationals, and with individuals and entities that are specially-designated nationals of those countries, narcotics traffickers, and terrorists or terrorist organizations. Our subsidiaries may be subject to additional foreign or local sanctions requirements in other relevant jurisdictions.

Fluctuations in the costs of paper, ink, energy, by-products and other raw materials may adversely impact the results of our operations.

Purchases of paper, ink, energy and other raw materials represent a large portion of our costs. Increases in the costs of these inputs may increase our costs and we may not be able to pass these costs on to customers through higher prices. In addition, we may not be able to resell waste paper and other print-related by-products or may be adversely impacted by decreases in the prices for these by-products. Increases in the cost of materials may adversely impact customers' demand for our printing and printing-related services.

We may be required to take write downs or write-offs, restructuring and impairment or other charges that could have a significant negative effect on our financial condition, results of operations and stock price, which could cause you to lose some or all of your investment.

Although we conducted due diligence before the consummation of the Novitex Business Combination with respect to SourceHOV and Novitex, we cannot assure you that this diligence revealed all material issues that may be present in our current businesses, that it would be possible to uncover all material issues through a customary amount of due diligence, or that factors outside of our control will not later arise. As a result, we may be forced to write down or write off assets, restructure our operations, or incur impairment or other charges that could result in losses. Unexpected risks may arise and previously known risks may materialize in a manner not consistent with our risk analysis with respect to the Novitex Business Combination. Even though these charges may be non-cash items and may not have an immediate impact on our liquidity, the fact that we report charges of this nature could contribute to negative market perceptions about us or our securities, including, without limitation, our Common Stock.

The market for our securities remains volatile and may not continue, which would adversely affect the liquidity and price of our securities.

The price of our securities, including, without limitation, our Common Stock, may continue to fluctuate significantly. An active trading market for our securities following the Novitex Business Combination may not further develop or be sustained. In addition, the price of our securities can fluctuate due to general economic conditions and forecasts, our general business condition and the release of our financial reports.

If we are not able to comply with the applicable continued listing requirements or standards of Nasdaq, Nasdaq could delist our common stock.

Our Common Stock is currently listed on the Nasdaq. In order to maintain that listing, we must satisfy minimum financial and other continued listing requirements and standards, including those regarding director independence and independent committee requirements, minimum stockholders' equity, minimum share price, and certain corporate governance requirements. There can be no assurances that we will be able to comply with the applicable listing standards.

In the event that our common stock is delisted from Nasdaq and is not eligible for quotation or listing on another market or exchange, trading of our common stock could be conducted only in the over-the-counter market or on an electronic bulletin board established for unlisted securities such as the Pink Sheets or the OTC Bulletin Board. In such event, it could become more difficult to dispose of, or obtain accurate price quotations for, our common stock, and there would likely also be a reduction in our coverage by securities analysts and the news media, which could cause the price of our common stock to decline. Also, it may be difficult for us to raise additional capital if we are not listed on a major exchange.

Such a de-listing would also likely have a negative effect on the price of our Common Stock. In the event of a de-listing, we may take actions to restore our compliance with Nasdaq's listing requirements, but we can provide no assurance that any such action taken by us would allow our Common Stock to become listed again, stabilize the market price or improve the liquidity of our common or prevent future non-compliance with Nasdaq's listing requirements.

Changes in laws or regulations, or a failure to comply with any laws and regulations, may adversely affect our business, investments and results of operations.

We are subject to laws, regulations and rules enacted by national, regional and local governments and Nasdaq. In particular, we are required to comply with certain SEC, Nasdaq and other legal or regulatory requirements. Compliance with, and monitoring of, applicable laws, regulations and rules may be difficult, time consuming and costly. Those laws, regulations and rules and their interpretation and application may also change from time to time and those changes could have a material adverse effect on our business, investments and results of operations. In addition, a failure to comply with applicable laws, regulations and rules, as interpreted and applied, could have a material adverse effect on our business and results of operations.

ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS

None.

ITEM 2. PROPERTIES

We lease and own numerous facilities worldwide with larger concentrations of space in Texas, Michigan, Connecticut, California, India, Mexico, the Philippines, and China. The size of our active property portfolio as of December 31, 2018 was approximately 4.4 million square feet (square feet) and comprised of 178 leased properties and 7 owned properties. offices, sales offices, service locations, and production facilities. Many of our operating facilities are equipped with fiber connectivity and have access to other power sources. Substantially all of our operations facilities are leased under long-term leases with varying expiration dates, except for the following owned locations: (i) three operations facilities in India with a combined building area of approximately 91,500 sq. ft., respectively, (ii) an operating facility in Georgiana, Alabama with an approximate building area of 20,000 sq. ft., (iii) an operating facility in Tallahassee, Florida consisting of four buildings with a combined building area of approximately 21,000 sq. ft., (iv) an operating facility in Troy, Michigan that will serve as the Company’s primary data center with an approximate building area of 66,000 sq. ft. (v) an operating facility in Egham, England with an approximate building area of 11,000 sq. ft., and (vi) an innovation center in New York, NY with an approximate building area of 2,200 sq. ft. We also maintain an operating presence at approximately 1,100 customer sites.

Our properties are suitable to deliver services to our customers for each of our business segments. Our management believes that all of our properties and facilities are well maintained.

ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

Appraisal Demand

On September 21, 2017, former stockholders of SourceHOV, who allege combined ownership of 10,304 shares of SourceHOV common stock, filed a petition for appraisal pursuant to 8 Del. C. § 262 in the Delaware Court of Chancery, captioned Manichaean Capital, LLC, et al. v. SourceHOV Holdings, Inc., C.A. No. 2017-0673-JRS (the “Appraisal Action”). The Appraisal Action arises out of the Novitex Business Combination, which gave rise to appraisal rights pursuant to 8 Del. C. § 262. In the Appraisal Action, the petitioners seek, among other things, a determination of the fair value of their shares at the time of the Novitex Business Combination; an order that SourceHOV pay that value to the petitioners, together with interest at the statutory rate; and an award of costs, attorneys’ fees, and other expenses.

On October 12, 2017, SourceHOV filed its answer to the petition and a verified list pursuant to 8 Del. C. § 262(f). Discovery in the Appraisal Action is not yet complete. At this stage of the litigation, the Company is unable to predict the outcome of the Appraisal Action or estimate any loss or range of loss that may arise from the Appraisal Action. Pursuant to the terms of the Novitex Business Combination Agreement, if such appraisal rights are perfected, a corresponding portion of shares of our Common Stock issued to Ex-Sigma 2 LLC, our principal stockholder, will be forfeited at such time as the PIPE Financing (as defined in the Consent, Waiver and Amendment dated June 15, 2017) is repaid. The Company intends to vigorously defend against the Appraisal Action.

Other

We are, from time to time, involved in other legal proceedings, inquiries, claims and disputes, which arise in the ordinary course of business. Although our management cannot predict the outcomes of these matters, our management believes these actions will not have a material, adverse effect on our financial position, results of operations or cash flows.

ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES

Not applicable

PART II

ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES

Market Information

Our Common Stock is traded on the Nasdaq composite under the symbol "XELA." Set forth below is the high and low sales price of our Common Stock during the periods presented.

	Sales Price High	Sales Price Low
Year Ended December 31, 2018		
Fourth Quarter	$ 7.02	$ 3.46
Third Quarter	7.34	4.65
Second Quarter	5.87	4.32
First Quarter	6.42	5.08
Year Ended December 31, 2017		
Fourth Quarter	$ 6.10	$ 4.37
Third Quarter (1)	10.00	4.40
Second Quarter	10.03	7.66
First Quarter	10.15	9.93

(1) Our Common Stock began trading on the Nasdaq under the symbol "XELA" on July 13, 2017, the day following the closing of the Novitex Business Combination. From March 9, 2015 until the July 12, 2017 closing of the Novitex Business Combination common equity of Quinpario was traded on the Nasdaq under the symbol "QPAC." Unlike our Common Stock, the common equity traded under the symbol QPAC had cash redemption rights and other features that ceased upon the filing of a new certificate of incorporation in connection with the closing of the Novitex Business Combination. Information provided above includes data for QPAC for the period prior to July 13, 2017.

Stockholders

As of March 11, 2019 we had 47 record holders of our Common Stock.

Dividends

We have not paid any cash dividends on shares of our Common Stock. The payment of cash dividends in the future will be dependent upon our revenues and earnings, capital requirements, general financial condition, and is within the discretion of our board of directors.

Equity Compensation Plan Information

The following table provides information as of December 31, 2018, with respect to the shares of our Common Stock that may be issued under our existing equity compensation plans.

Plan Category	Number of Securities to be Issued Upon Exercise of Outstanding Options, RSU, Warrants and Rights	Weighted Average Exercise Price of Outstanding Options, Warrants and Rights	Number of Securities Remaining Available for Future Issuance Under Equity Compensation Plans(1)
Equity compensation plans approved by stockholders	4,617,750	6.06	7,176,262
Equity compensation plans not approved by stockholders	—	—	—
Total	4,617,750	6.06	7,176,262

(1) The Company currently maintains the 2018 Stock Incentive Plan, which was approved by our board of directors on December 19, 2017 and subsequently approved by a majority of our stockholders by written consent on December 20, 2017. The 2018 Stock Incentive Plan became effective on January 17, 2018 and there are 8,196,482 shares of our Common Stock reserved for issuance under our 2018 Stock Incentive Plan.

Sale of Unregistered Securities

There were no unregistered sales of equity securities in 2018 that have not been previously reported in a Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q or Current Report on Form 8-K.

Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

The table below sets forth information with respect to purchases made by or on behalf of us or any "affiliated purchaser" (as defined in Rule 10b-18(a)(3) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) of shares of our Common Stock during the period of November 8, 2017 through the year ended December 31, 2017:

Period	Number of Shares Purchased	Average Price Paid per Share	Total Number of Shares Purchased as Part of Publicly Announced Plans or Programs(1)	Maximum Number of Shares that May Yet Be Purchased Under the Plans or Programs(1)
Year Ended December 31, 2017				
Fourth Quarter	49,300	$ 4.97	49,300	4,950,700
Year Ended December 31, 2018				
First Quarter	—	—	49,300	4,950,700
Second Quarter	768,693	4.79	817,993	4,182,007
Third Quarter	225,504	4.94	1,043,497	3,956,503
Fourth Quarter	1,505,688	3.91	2,549,185	2,450,815
Total	2,549,185	$ 4.71	2,549,185	2,450,815

(1) On November 8, 2017, the Company's board of directors authorized a share buyback program (the "Share Buyback Program"), pursuant to which the Company may, from time to time, purchase up to 5,000,000 shares of its Common Stock. Share repurchases may be executed through various means, including, without limitation, open market transactions, privately negotiated transactions or otherwise. The decision as to whether to purchase any shares and the timing of purchases, if any, will be based on the price of the Company's Common Stock, general business and

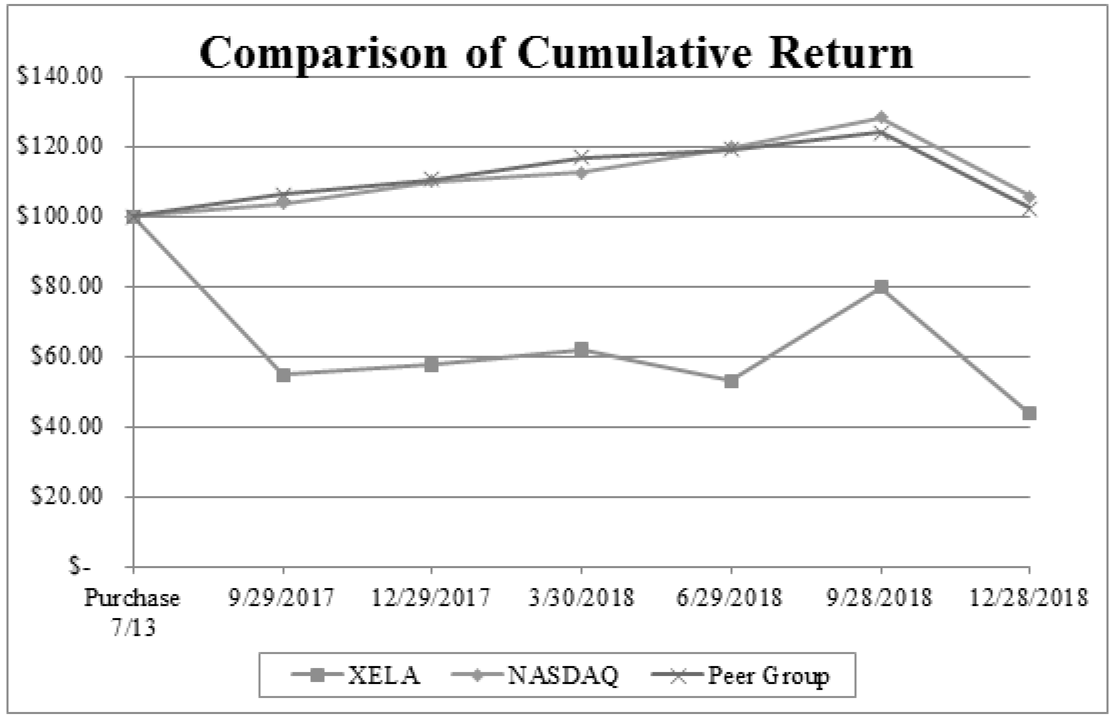
market conditions and other investment considerations and factors. The Share Buyback Program does not obligate the Company to purchase any shares and expires 24 months after authorized. The Share Buyback Program may be terminated or amended by the Company's board of directors in its discretion at any time. As of December 31, 2018, 2,549,185 shares had been repurchased under the Share Buyback Program. The Company records treasury stock using the cost method.

Stock Performance Graph

The stock performance graph and related information is not deemed to be "soliciting material" or to be "filed" with the Securities and Exchange Commission or subject to Regulation 14A or 14C under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 or to the liabilities of Section 18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and will not be deemed to be incorporated by reference into any filing under the Securities Act of 1933 or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, except to the extent we specifically incorporate it by reference into such a filing.

The graph and table set forth below compares the cumulative stockholder return from July 13, 2017 (the date our Common Stock began trading on Nasdaq) through December 28, 2018 for our Common Stock, the Nasdaq composite, and a peer group. Measurement points are the last trading day of each month and we assumed that dividends have been reinvested. The selected peer group for the period is comprised of four companies that we believe are our closest reporting issuer competitors: Cognizant Technology Solutions Corp., ExlService Holdings, Inc., Genpact Ltd., and WNS (Holdings). The returns of the component entities of our peer index are weighted according to the market capitalization of each company as of the beginning of each period for which a return is presented. The returns assume

that $100 was invested on July 13, 2017. The performance shown in the graph and table is historical and should not be considered indicative of future price performance.



	Exela Technologies, Inc.	Nasdaq	Peer Group
Commence Trading as XELA 7/13/2017 (1)	$ 100	$ 100	$ 100
7/31/2017.	54.81	103.53	106.32
8/31/2017.	57.61	110.02	110.59
9/29/2017.	61.86	112.58	116.70
10/31/2017.	53.13	119.70	118.92
11/30/2017.	79.75	128.24	123.82
12/29/2017.	$ 43.51	$ 105.75	$ 102.17

(1) From March 9, 2015 until the July 12, 2017 closing of the Novitex Business Combination common equity of Quinpario was traded on the Nasdaq under the symbol "QPAC." QPAC stock had cash redemption rights and other features that ceased upon the filing of a new certificate of incorporation in connection with the closing of the Novitex Business Combination. A vast majority of the holders of QPAC stock exercised their redemption rights. QPAC common equity and XELA's Common Stock are so different, we believe it would be misleading to present QPAC data from March 9, 2015 until the Novitex Business Combination as if it were XELA stock.

ITEM 6. SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA

The following selected consolidated financial data should be read in conjunction with Item 7, "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and Item 8, "Financial Statements and Supplementary Data" of this Annual Report. Additionally, increases in revenue from 2014 to 2015 of $154.3 million, cost of revenue of $108.3 million, and a decrease in selling, general and administrative expenses of $11.2 million relate to the acquisition of BancTec which occurred on October 31, 2014. Due to this acquisition the company acquired new debt and paid down existing debt in 2014. This resulted in an increase of interest expense of $60.7 million in 2015 and a loss on extinguishment of debt in 2014 of $18.5 million. Finally, in 2014 the company impaired $154.5 million of goodwill and trade names.

	Year Ended December 31,				
(in thousands, except share and per share data)	**2018**	**2017**	**2016**	**2015**	**2014**
Statements of Operations Information:					
Revenue	$ 1,586,222	$ 1,152,324	789,926	$ 805,232	$ 650,918
Cost of revenue (exclusive of depreciation and amortization)	1,209,874	829,143	519,121	559,846	451,539
Selling, general and administrative expenses	184,651	220,955	130,437	120,691	131,864
Depreciation and amortization	145,485	98,890	79,639	75,408	65,227
Impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets	48,127	69,437	—	—	154,454
Related party expense	4,334	33,431	10,493	8,977	19,080
Operating (loss) income	(6,249)	(99,532)	50,236	40,310	(171,246)
Other expense (income), net:					
Interest expense, net	153,095	128,489	109,414	108,779	48,045
Loss on extinguishment of debt	1,067	35,512	—	—	18,548
Sundry expense, net	(3,271)	2,295	712	3,247	(2,201)
Other income, net	(3,030)	(1,297)	—	—	—
Net loss before income taxes	(154,110)	(264,531)	(59,890)	(71,716)	(235,638)
Income tax (expense) benefit	(8,407)	60,246	11,787	26,812	38,003
Net loss	(162,517)	(204,285)	(48,103)	(44,904)	(197,635)
Dividend equivalent on Series A Preferred Stock related to beneficial conversion feature	—	(16,375)	—	—	—
Cumulative dividends for Series A Preferred Stock	(3,655)	(2,489)	—	—	—
Net loss attributable to common stockholders	(166,172)	(223,149)	(48,103)	(44,904)	(197,635)
Loss per share:					
Basic	(1.09)	(2.08)	(0.75)	(0.70)	(3.1)
Diluted	(1.09)	(2.08)	(0.75)	(0.70)	(3.1)
Weighted average number of shares outstanding:					
Basic	152,343,823	107,068,262	64,024,557	64,024,557	64,024,557
Diluted	152,343,823	107,068,262	64,024,557	64,024,557	64,024,557

	As of December 31,				
(in thousands)	**2018**	**2017**	**2016**	**2015**	**2014**
Balance Sheet Data:					
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 25,615	$ 39,000	$ 8,361	$ 16,619	$ 21,997
Accounts receivable, net of allowance for doubtful accounts	270,812	229,704	138,421	145,162	157,853
Working capital	(76,821)	(26,049)	(41,404)	18,162	42,583
Total Assets	1,639,782	1,714,838	969,486	960,048	1,119,468
Long-term debt, net of current maturities	1,306,423	1,276,094	983,502	975,142	952,071
Total liabilities	1,820,788	1,724,844	1,309,387	1,251,537	1,273,438
Total stockholders' deficit	(181,006)	(10,006)	(339,901)	(291,489)	(153,970)

ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

Forward Looking Statements

The following Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations should be read in conjunction with a review of the other Items included in this Annual Report and our December 31, 2018 Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this report. Certain statements contained in this "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" may be deemed to be forward-looking statements. See "Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements."

Overview

We are a global provider of transaction processing solutions, enterprise information management, document management and digital business process services. Our technology-enabled solutions allow global organizations to address critical challenges resulting from the massive amounts of data obtained and created through their daily operations. Our solutions address the life cycle of transaction processing and enterprise information management, from enabling payment gateways and data exchanges across multiple systems, to matching inputs against contracts and handling exceptions, to ultimately depositing payments and distributing communications. We believe our process expertise, information technology capabilities and operational insights enable our customers' organizations to more efficiently and effectively execute transactions, make decisions, drive revenue and profitability, and communicate critical information to their employees, customers, partners, and vendors.

History

We are a former blank check company that completed our initial public offering on January 22, 2015. In July 2017, Exela Technologies, Inc. ("Exela"), formerly known as Quinpario Acquisition Corp. 2 ("Quinpario"), completed its acquisition of SourceHOV Holdings, Inc. ("SourceHOV") and Novitex Holdings, Inc. ("Novitex") pursuant to the business combination agreement dated February 21, 2017 ("Novitex Business Combination"). In conjunction with the completion of the Novitex Business Combination, Quinpario was renamed Exela Technologies, Inc.

The Novitex Business Combination was accounted for as a reverse merger for which SourceHOV was determined to be the accounting acquirer. Outstanding shares of SourceHOV were converted into our Common Stock, presented as a recapitalization, and the net assets of Quinpario were acquired at historical cost, with no goodwill or other intangible assets recorded. The acquisition of Novitex was treated as a business combination under ASC 805 and was accounted for using the acquisition method. The strategic combination of SourceHOV and Novitex formed Exela, which is one of the largest global providers of information processing solutions based on revenues.

Basis of Presentation

This analysis is presented on a consolidated basis. In addition, a description is provided of significant transactions and events that have an impact on the comparability of the results being analyzed. Due to our specific situation, the presented financial information for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 is only partially comparable to the financial information for the year ended December 31, 2017 and 2016. Since SourceHOV was deemed the accounting acquirer in the Novitex Business Combination consummated on July 12, 2017, the presented financial information for the year ended December 31, 2016 reflects the financial information and activities of SourceHOV only. The presented financial information for the year ended December 31, 2017 includes the financial information and activities for SourceHOV for the period January 1, 2017 to December 31, 2017 (365 days) as well as the financial information and activities of Novitex for the period July 13, 2017 to December 31, 2017 (172 days). This lack of comparability needs to be taken into account when reading the discussion and analysis of our results of operations and cash flows. Furthermore, the presented financial information for the year ended December 31, 2017 also contains other costs that are directly associated with the Novitex Business Combination, such as professional fees, to support the our new and complex legal, tax, statutory and reporting requirements following the Novitex Business Combination.

Our Segments

Our three reportable segments are Information & Transaction Processing Solutions ("ITPS"), Healthcare Solutions ("HS"), and Legal & Loss Prevention Services ("LLPS"). These segments are comprised of significant strategic business units that align our TPS and EIM products and services with how we manage our business, approach our key markets and interact with our customers based on their respective industries.

ITPS: Our largest segment, ITPS, provides a wide range of solutions and services designed to aid businesses in information capture, processing, decisioning and distribution to customers primarily in the financial services, commercial, public sector and legal industries. Our major customers include 9 of the top 10 U.S. banks, 7 of the top 10 U.S. insurance companies, 5 of the top U.S. telecom companies, over 40 utility companies, over 30 state and county departments, and over 80 government entities. Our ITPS offerings enable companies to increase availability of working capital, reduce turnaround times for application processes, increase regulatory compliance and enhance consumer engagement.

HS: HS operates and maintains a consulting and outsourcing business specializing in both the healthcare provider and payer markets. We serve the top 5 healthcare insurance payers and over 900 healthcare providers.

LLPS: Our LLPS segment provides a broad and active array of support services in connection with class action, bankruptcy labor, claims adjudication and employment and other legal matters. Our customer base consists of corporate counsel, government attorneys, and law firms.

Acquisitions

In April 2018 Exela completed the acquisition of Asterion International Group ("Asterion," the "Asterion Business Combination"), a well-established provider of technology driven business process outsourcing, document management and business process automation across Europe. The acquisition comes with minimal customer overlap and is strategic to expanding Exela's European business. Through the acquisition of Asterion, we expect to leverage brand awareness, strengthen margins, and expand the existing Asterion sales channels.

In July 2017, we completed the Novitex Business Combination. SourceHOV was deemed to be the accounting acquirer, and is a leading provider of platform-based enterprise information management and transaction processing solutions primarily for the healthcare, banking and financial services, commercial, public sector and legal industries. Through the acquisition of SourceHOV and Novitex, we expect to realize revenue synergies, leverage brand awareness, strengthen margins, generate greater free cash flow, expand the existing Novitex sales channels, and increase utilization of the existing workforce. We anticipate opportunities for growth through the ability to leverage additional future services and capabilities.

Prior to the Novitex Business Combination, SourceHOV transformed into an industry-agnostic solution provider and acquired key technology through the acquisition of TransCentra, Inc. ("TransCentra") in September 2016, a provider of integrated outsourced billing, remittance processing and imaging software and consulting services. The addition of TransCentra increased SourceHOV's footprint in the remittance transaction processing and presentment area, expanded its mobile banking offering and enabled significant cross-selling and up-selling opportunities.

Revenues

ITPS revenues are primarily generated from a transaction-based pricing model for the various types of volumes processed, licensing and maintenance fees for technology sales, and a mix of fixed management fee and transactional revenue for document logistics and location services. HS revenues are primarily generated from a transaction-based pricing model for the various types of volumes processed for healthcare payers and providers. LLPS revenues are primarily based on time and materials pricing as well as through transactional services priced on a per item basis.

People

We draw on the business and technical expertise of our talented and diverse global workforce to provide our customers with high-quality services. Our business leaders bring a strong diversity of experience in our industry and a track record of successful performance and execution.

As of December 31, 2018, we had approximately 22,000 employees globally, with 46% located in the United States and the remainder located primarily in Europe, India, the Philippines, Canada, Mexico, and China.

Costs associated with our employees represent the most significant expense for our business. We incurred personnel costs of $687.3 million, $532.3 million, and $373.2 million for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The majority of our personnel costs are variable and are incurred only while we are providing our services.

Facilities

We lease and own numerous facilities worldwide with larger concentrations of space in Texas, Michigan, Connecticut, California, India, Mexico, the Philippines, and China. Our owned and leased facilities house general offices, sales offices, service locations, and production facilities.

The size of our active property portfolio as of December 31, 2018 was approximately 4.4 million square feet at an annual operating cost of approximately $38.9 million and comprised of 178 leased properties and 7 owned properties.

We believe that our current facilities are suitable and adequate for our current businesses. Because of the interrelation of our business segments, each of the segments uses substantially all of these properties at least in part.

Key Performance Indicators

We use a variety of operational and financial measures to assess our performance. Among the measures considered by our management are the following:

- Revenue by segment;
- EBITDA; and
- Adjusted EBITDA.

Revenue

We analyze our revenue by comparing actual monthly revenue to internal projections and prior periods across our operating segments in order to assess performance, identify potential areas for improvement, and determine whether segments are meeting management's expectations.

EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA

We view EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA as important indicators of performance. We define EBITDA as net income, plus taxes, interest expense, and depreciation and amortization. We define Adjusted EBITDA as EBITDA plus optimization and restructuring charges, including severance and retention expenses; transaction and integration costs; other non-cash charges, including non-cash compensation, (gain) or loss from sale or disposal of assets, and impairment charges; and management fees and expenses. See "—Other Financial Information (Non-GAAP Financial Measures)" for more information and a reconciliation of EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA to net loss, the most directly comparable financial measure calculated and presented in accordance with GAAP.

Results of Operations

Year Ended December 31, 2018, Compared to Year Ended December 31, 2017

	Year Ended December 31, 2018	2017
Revenue:		
ITPS	$ 1,273,647	$ 827,110
HS	228,015	233,595
LLPS	84,560	91,619
Total revenue	1,586,222	1,152,324
Cost of revenue (exclusive of depreciation and amortization:		
ITPS	1,007,301	620,719
HS	151,367	152,864
LLPS	51,206	55,560
Total cost of revenues	1,209,874	829,143
Selling, general and administrative expenses	184,651	220,955
Depreciation and amortization	145,485	98,890
Impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets	48,127	69,437
Related party expense	4,334	33,431
Operating loss	(6,249)	(99,532)
Interest expense, net	153,095	128,489
Loss on extinguishment of debt	1,067	35,512
Sundry expense (income), net	(3,271)	2,295
Other (income), net	(3,030)	(1,297)
Net loss before income taxes	(154,110)	(264,531)
Income tax (expense) benefit	(8,407)	60,246
Net loss	(162,517)	(204,285)

Revenue

Our revenue increased $433.9 million, or 37.7%, to $1,586.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $1,152.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. This increase is primarily related to an increase in our ITPS segment revenues of $446.5 million, which was primarily attributable to the acquisition of Novitex in 2017. The increase was partially offset by a decrease in revenues in the HS segment and LLPS segment of $5.6 million and $7.1 million, respectively. Our ITPS, HS, and LLPS segments constituted 80.3%, 14.4%, and 5.3% of our total revenue, respectively, for the year ended December 31, 2018, compared to 71.8%, 20.3%, and 7.9%, respectively, for the year ended December 31, 2017. The revenue changes by reporting segment was as follows:

ITPS—Revenues increased $446.5 million, or 54.0%, to $1,273.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $827.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The increase was primarily attributable to acquisitions in 2017 and 2018 which contributed $445.0 million of the increase. The remaining increase in revenue was the result of net increases in services provided to ITPS customers.

HS—Revenues decreased $5.6 million, or 2.4%, to $228.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $233.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The decrease was primarily attributable to a decline in volume from a single customer who lost a contract from one of its customers. The decrease was partially offset by ramp up of new businesses

LLPS—Revenues decreased $7.1 million, or 7.7%, to $84.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $91.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The decrease was primarily attributable to lower revenue resulting from the sale of Meridian Consulting Group, LLC of approximately $1.3 million and lower revenue from legal claims administration services of $5.1 million during the year ended December 31, 2018, compared to the year ended December 31, 2017.

Cost of Revenue

Cost of revenue increased $380.7 million, or 45.9%, to $1,209.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $829.1 million for year ended December 31, 2017. The increase was primarily attributable to an increase in the ITPS segment of $386.6 million, offset by decreases in the HS and LLPS segments of $1.5 million and $4.4 million, respectively. The cost of revenue decrease by operating segment was as follows:

ITPS—Cost of revenue increased $386.6 million, or 62.3%, to $1,007.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $620.7 million for year ended December 31, 2017. The increase was primarily attributable to acquisitions in 2018 and 2017, which contributed $387.6 million.

HS—Cost of revenue decreased $1.5 million, or 1.0%, to $151.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $152.9 million for year ended December 31, 2017. The decrease was primarily attributable to a decline in volume from a single customer who lost a contract from one of its customers. Cost of revenue as a percentage of revenue remained relatively flat at 66.4% for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to 65.4% for the year ended December 31, 2017.

LLPS—Cost of revenue decreased $4.4 million, or 7.8%, to $51.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $55.6 million for year ended December 31, 2017. The decrease was primarily attributable to a decrease in revenues of $1.0 million as a result of the sale of Meridian Consulting Group, LLC and a decrease from the legal claims administration of $2.6 million.

Selling, General and Administrative Expenses ("SG&A")

Selling, general, and administrative expenses decreased $36.3 million, or 16.4%, to $184.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $221.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The decrease was primarily attributable to the 2017 expenses for professional fees related to the Novitex Business Combination, which contributed $60.0 million in expense for the year ended December 31, 2017. The decrease is offset by increases attributable to acquisitions in 2018 and 2017 which contributed $13.2 million in expense for the year ended December 31, 2018. The decrease was additionally offset by investments in our strategy to grow revenue and increases in public company and compliance costs.

Depreciation & Amortization

Depreciation and amortization expense increased $46.6 million, or 47.1%, to $145.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $98.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The increase was primarily attributable to accelerated amortization of trademarks and trade names resulting in higher amortization expense for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to the year ended December 31, 2017.

Impairment of Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets

Impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets for the year ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 was $48.1 million and $69.4 million. As a result of declining revenue and a change in our branding and marketing strategy, we quantitatively assessed goodwill and other intangible assets as part of our annual impairment test. This assessment resulted in an impairment charge of $44.4 million, including taxes, for goodwill for the LLPS reporting unit, and $3.7 million related to our trade names intangible assets.

Related Party Expense

Related party expense decreased $29.1 million, or 87.0%, to $4.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $33.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The decrease was primarily attributable to the $23.0 million of contract termination and advisory fees to HGM during 2017 in connection with the Novitex Business Combination. Additionally, the July 2017 termination of the management agreement with HGM resulted in lower management fees expense of $6.0M for the comparative period.

Interest Expense

Interest expense increased $24.6 million, or 19.2%, to $153.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $128.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The increase was primarily attributable to the issuance of new debt in conjunction with the Novitex Business Combination.

Loss on Extinguishment of Debt

Loss on extinguishment of debt for the year ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 was $1.1 million and $35.5 million. The decrease is directly related to the restructuring and Novitex Business Combination in 2017.

Sundry Expense (income)

Sundry expense increased by $5.6 million to $(3.3) million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $2.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The increase was mainly attributable to foreign currency transaction losses associated with exchange rate fluctuations.

Other Income

Other income for the year ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 was $2.9 million and $1.3 million. The interest rate swap was not designated as a hedge. As such, changes in the fair value of the derivative of $2.5 million are recorded directly in earnings.

Income Tax (Expense) Benefit

Income tax benefit decreased $68.7 million to $(8.4) million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $60.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The December 31, 2018 federal tax expense is primarily due to the impact of the TCJA.

Results of Operations

Year Ended December 31, 2017, Compared to Year Ended December 31, 2016

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2017	2016
Revenue:		
ITPS	$ 827,110	$ 439,924
HS	233,595	247,796
LLPS	91,619	102,206
Total revenue	1,152,324	789,926
Cost of revenue (exclusive of depreciation and amortization:		
ITPS	620,719	296,848
HS	152,864	158,800
LLPS	55,560	63,473
Total cost of revenues	829,143	519,121
Selling, general and administrative expenses	220,955	130,437
Depreciation and amortization	98,890	79,639
Impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets	69,437	—
Related party expense	33,431	10,493
Operating income (loss)	(99,532)	50,236
Interest expense, net	128,489	109,414
Loss on extinguishment of debt	35,512	—
Sundry expense (income), net	2,295	712
Other (income), net	(1,297)	—
Net loss before income taxes	(264,531)	(59,890)
Income tax benefit	60,246	11,787
Net loss	(204,285)	(48,103)

Revenue

Our revenue increased $362.4 million, or 45.9%, to $1,152.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $789.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. This increase is primarily related to an increase in our ITPS segment revenues of $387.2 million, which was primarily attributable to the acquisition of TransCentra in 2016 and Novitex in 2017. The increase was partially offset by a decrease in revenues in the HS segment and LLPS segment of $14.2 million and $10.6 million, respectively. Our ITPS, HS, and LLPS segments constituted 71.8%, 20.3%, and 7.9% of our total revenue, respectively, for the year ended December 31, 2017, compared to 55.7%, 31.4%, and 12.9%, respectively, for the year ended December 31, 2016. The revenue changes by reporting segment was as follows:

ITPS—Revenues increased $387.2 million, or 88.0%, to $827.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $439.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase was primarily attributable to the acquisition of Novitex, which contributed $292.1 million of the increase. Additionally, the acquisition of TransCentra contributed $94.1 million of the increase. The remaining increase in revenue was the result of net increases in services provided to ITPS customers.

HS—Revenues decreased $14.2 million, or 5.7%, to $233.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $247.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The decrease was primarily attributable to a surge in demand from healthcare provider customers in early 2016 as a result of a change in regulatory coding requirements beginning in the fourth quarter of 2015, resulting in a decline in revenue of $17.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to the year ended December 31, 2016. We have since experienced a normalization of demand as healthcare provider customers have reduced outsourcing of the service. The decrease was partially offset by an increase in revenues of $3.7 million from the Payer business during the period.

LLPS—Revenues decreased $10.6 million, or 10.4%, to $91.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $102.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The decrease was primarily attributable to lower revenue resulting from the sale of Meridian Consulting Group, LLC of approximately $4.4 million, lower revenue from the legal claims administration services of $4.3 million, and lower revenue from labor and employment practice of $1.9 million, during the year ended December 31, 2017, compared to the year ended December 31, 2016.

Cost of Revenue

Cost of revenue increased $310.0 million, or 59.7%, to $829.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $519.1 million for year ended December 31, 2016. The increase was primarily attributable to an increase in the ITPS segment of $323.9 million, offset by decreases in the HS and LLPS segments of $5.9 million and $7.9 million, respectively. The cost of revenue decrease by operating segment was as follows:

ITPS—Cost of revenue increased $323.9 million, or 109.1%, to $620.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $296.8 million for year ended December 31, 2016. The increase was primarily attributable to the acquisition of Novitex, which contributed $248.6 million. The acquisition of TransCentra contributed approximately $75.4 million. The increase was partially offset by various cost savings initiatives implemented during the year ended December 31, 2017.

HS—Cost of revenue decreased $5.9 million, or 3.7%, to $152.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $158.8 million for year ended December 31, 2016. This was primarily attributable to normalization of demand for coding during the year ended December 31, 2017 after the surge we experienced in early 2016 as a result of the increased healthcare coding requirements, resulting in a decrease of $4.5 million, along with an associated decrease in revenue. Additionally, there was a decrease of $1.4 million due to various cost savings initiatives from the Payer business during the year ended December 31, 2017.

LLPS—Cost of revenue decreased $7.9 million, or 12.4%, to $55.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $63.5 million for year ended December 31, 2016. The decrease was primarily attributable to a decrease in revenues of $2.7 million as a result of the sale of Meridian Consulting Group, LLC, a decrease from the legal claims administration of $2.6 million, and a decrease of $2.6 million due to lower revenues from labor and employment practice.

Selling, General and Administrative Expenses ("SG&A")

Selling, general, and administrative expenses increased $90.6 million, or 69.5%, to $221.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $130.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase was primarily attributable to the expenses for professional fees related to the Novitex Business Combination, which contributed $60.0 million in expense for the year ended December 31, 2017. Additionally, the increase is attributable to acquisitions of Novitex and TransCentra, which contributed $25.2 million and $8.3 million, respectively, in expense for the year ended December 31, 2017. The increases were partially offset by a decrease due to cost saving initiatives we implemented, including reduced medical insurance expenditures and administrative personnel costs.

Depreciation & Amortization

Depreciation and amortization expense increased $19.3 million, or 24.2%, to $98.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $79.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase was primarily attributable to higher balances of customer relationships, developed technology, and outsourced contract costs, resulting in higher amortization expense for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to the year ended December 31, 2016.

Impairment of Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets

Impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets for the year ended December 31, 2017 was $69.4 million. There was no impairment recorded in 2016. As a result of declining revenue and a change in our branding and marketing strategy, we quantitatively assessed goodwill and other intangible assets as part of our annual impairment test. This

assessment resulted in an impairment charge of $30.1 million for goodwill for the LLPS reporting unit, and $39.3 million related to our trade names intangible assets.

Related Party Expense

Related party expense increased $22.9 million to $33.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $10.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase was primarily attributable to contract termination and advising fees as a result of the Novitex Business Combination.

Interest Expense

Interest expense increased $19.1 million, or 17.5%, to $128.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $109.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase was primarily attributable to the issuance of new debt in conjunction with the Novitex Business Combination.

Loss on Extinguishment of Debt

Loss on extinguishment of debt for the year ended December 31, 2017 was $35.5 million relating to the restructuring and Novitex Business Combination. There was no loss on extinguishment in 2016.

Sundry Expense

Sundry expense increased by $1.6 million to $2.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $0.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase was mainly attributable to higher foreign currency transaction losses associated with exchange rate fluctuations.

Other Income

Other income for the year ended December 31, 2017 was $1.3 million. There was no other income in 2016 as this item relates solely to the interest rate swap entered into in 2017. The interest rate swap was not designated as a hedge. As such, changes in the fair value of the derivative are recorded directly in earnings.

Income Tax Benefit

Income tax benefit increased $48.4 million to $60.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $11.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase in the income tax benefit was primarily due to net deferred tax liabilities assumed in the acquisition of Novitex which reduced the valuation allowance.

Other Financial Information (Non-GAAP Financial Measures)

We view EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA as important indicators of performance. We define EBITDA as net income, plus taxes, interest expense, and depreciation and amortization. We define Adjusted EBITDA as EBITDA plus optimization and restructuring charges, including severance and retention expenses; transaction and integration costs; other non-cash charges, including non-cash compensation, (gain) or loss from sale or disposal of assets, and impairment charges; and management fees and expenses.

We present EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA because we believe they provide useful information regarding the factors and trends affecting our business in addition to measures calculated under GAAP. Additionally, our credit agreement requires us to comply with certain EBITDA related metrics. Refer to "—Liquidity and Capital Resources—Indebtedness."

Note Regarding Non-GAAP Financial Measures

EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA are not financial measures presented in accordance with GAAP. We believe that the presentation of these non-GAAP financial measures will provide useful information to investors in assessing our financial performance and results of operations as our board of directors and management use EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA to assess our financial performance, because it allows them to compare our operating performance on a consistent basis across periods by removing the effects of our capital structure (such as varying levels of interest expense), asset base (such as depreciation and amortization) and items outside the control of our management team. Net loss is the GAAP measure most directly comparable to EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA. Our non-GAAP financial measures should not be considered as alternatives to the most directly comparable GAAP financial measure. Each of these non-GAAP financial measures has important limitations as analytical tools because they exclude some but not all items that affect the most directly comparable GAAP financial measures. These non-GAAP financial measures are not required to be uniformly applied, are not audited and should not be considered in isolation or as substitutes for results prepared in accordance with GAAP. Because EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA may be defined differently by other companies in our industry, our definitions of these non-GAAP financial measures may not be comparable to similarly titled measures of other companies, thereby diminishing their utility.

The following tables present a reconciliation of EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA to our net loss, the most directly comparable GAAP measure, for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
Net Loss	$ (162,517)	$ (204,285)	$ (48,103)
Taxes	8,407	(60,246)	(11,787)
Interest expense	153,095	128,489	109,414
Depreciation and amortization	145,485	98,890	79,639
EBITDA	144,470	(37,152)	129,163
Optimization and restructuring expenses(1)	68,165	42,524	7,559
Transaction and integration costs(2)	4,121	88,935	18,848
Non-cash equity compensation(3)	7,647	6,743	7,085
Other charges including non-cash(4)	12,292	518	471
Loss (gain) on sale of assets(5)	(867)	40	2,274
Loss on business disposals (6)	1,363	(588)	—
Management, board fees and expenses	—	4,153	7,837
Loss on extinguishment of debt	1,067	35,512	—
Gain on derivative instruments (7)	(2,540)	(1,297)	—
Impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets	48,127	69,437	—
Adjusted EBITDA	283,845	208,825	173,237

(1) Adjustment represents net salary and benefits associated with positions that are part of the on-going savings initiatives including severance, retention bonuses, and related fees and expenses. Additionally, the adjustment includes charges incurred by us to terminate existing lease and vendor contracts as part of the on-going savings initiatives.

(2) Represents costs incurred related to transactions for completed or contemplated transactions during the period.

(3) Represents the non-cash charges related to restricted stock units and options granted by Ex-Sigma, LLC and Exela to our employees that vested during the year.

(4) Represents fair value adjustments to deferred revenue and deferred rent accounts established as part of purchase accounting and other non-cash charges. Other charges include a portion of the Company's transition expenses in 2018.

(5) Represents a loss recognized on the disposal of property, plant, and equipment and other assets.

(6) Represents a gain recognized on the disposal of Meridian Consulting Group, LLC.

(7) Represents the impact of changes in the fair value of an interest rate swap entered into during the fourth quarter of 2017.

Year Ended December 31, 2018 compared to the Year Ended December 31, 2017

EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA

EBITDA was $144.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $(37.2) million for the year ended December 31, 2017. Adjusted EBITDA was $283.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to $208.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The increase in EBITDA was primarily due to a lower net loss amount for the year ended December 31, 2018 resulting from an increase in revenue, decrease in selling, general and administrative expenses, decrease in related party expense, and decrease in loss on extinguishment of debt compared to the year ended December 31, 2017. The increase in Adjusted EBITDA was primarily due to lower transaction and integration costs for the year ended December 31, 2018 compared to the year ended December 31, 2017, along with lower impairment charges incurred in 2018 compared to 2017.

Year Ended December 31, 2017 compared to the Year Ended December 31, 2016

EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA

EBITDA was $(37.2) million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $129.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. Adjusted EBITDA was $208.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to $173.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The decrease in EBITDA was primarily due to a higher net loss amount for the year ended December 31, 2017 resulting from an increase in selling, general and administrative expenses, related party expense, and loss on extinguishment of debt compared to the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase in Adjusted EBITDA was primarily due higher overall gross profit for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to the year ended December 31, 2016, along with lower recurring expenses as part of on-going operations.

Liquidity and Capital Resources

Overview

Our primary source of liquidity is principally cash generated from operating activities supplemented as necessary on a short-term basis by borrowings against our senior secured revolving credit facility. We believe our current level of cash and short term financing capabilities along with future cash flows from operations are sufficient to meet the needs of the business.

We currently expect to spend approximately $35.0 to $40.0 million on total capital expenditures over the next twelve months. We believe that our operating cash flow and available borrowings under our credit facility will be sufficient to fund our operations for at least the next twelve months.

On July 13, 2018, Exela successfully repriced the $343.4 million of term loans outstanding under its senior secured credit facilities (the "Repricing"). The interest rates applicable to the Repricing Term Loans are 100 basis points lower than the interest rates applicable to the existing senior secured term loans that were incurred on July 12, 2017 pursuant to the First Lien Credit Agreement. The Repricing Term Loans will mature on July 12, 2023, the same maturity date as the existing senior secured term loans.

At December 31, 2018, cash and cash equivalents totaled $43.9 million including restricted cash, and we had availability of $79.4 million under our senior secured revolving credit facility.

In connection with the Novitex Business Combination, we acquired debt facilities and issued notes totaling $1.4 billion. Proceeds from the acquired debt were used to refinance the existing debt of SourceHOV, settle the outstanding debt facilities for Novitex, and pay fees and expenses incurred in connection with the Novitex Business Combination. We entered into a Credit Agreement with a $350.0 million senior secured term loan, a $100.0 million senior secured revolving facility, and $1.0 billion in First Priority Senior Secured Notes (the "Senior Secured Notes"). The $100.0 million revolver remained undrawn (net of letters of credit) at the time of compilation of this report.

On November 8, 2017, the Company's board of directors authorized a share buyback program (the "Share Buyback Program"), pursuant to which the Company may, from time to time, purchase up to 5,000,000 shares of its Common Stock. Share repurchases may be executed through various means, including, without limitation, open market transactions, privately negotiated transactions or otherwise. The decision as to whether to purchase any shares and the timing of purchases, if any, will be based on the price of the Company's Common Stock, general business and market conditions and other investment considerations and factors. The Share Buyback Program does not obligate the Company to purchase any shares and expires 24 months after authorization. The Share Buyback Program may be terminated or amended by the Company's board of directors in its discretion at any time. As of December 31, 2018, 2,549,185 shares had been repurchased under the Share Buyback Program.

Cash Flows

The following table summarizes our cash flows for the periods indicated:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
Cash flow from operating activities	$ 30,457	$ 23,455	$ 72,147
Cash flow used in investing activities	(66,304)	(452,374)	(31,602)
Cash flows (used in) provided by financing activities	(1,910)	475,727	(43,255)
Subtotal	(37,757)	46,808	(2,710)
Effect of exchange rates on cash	122	429	(2,059)
Net increase/(decrease) in cash	(37,635)	47,237	(4,769)

Analysis of Cash Flow Changes between the years ended December 31, 2018, December 31, 2017, and December 31, 2016

Operating Activities—Net cash provided by operating activities was $30.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2018, compared to $23.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The increase of $7.0 million in cash flow from operating activities was primarily driven by the lower net loss as compared to 2017 due to an improved business profile as well as lower transaction costs associated with the Novitex Business combination..

Net cash provided by operating activities was $23.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2017, compared to $72.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The decrease of $48.6 million in cash flow from operating activities was primarily due to decreases in operating results, greater cash outflows from accounts payable and accrued liabilities due to timing of payments, and lower cash inflows from accounts receivable due to the timing of collections.

Investing Activities—Net cash used in investing activities was $66.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2018, compared to $452.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The decrease of $386.1 million in cash used in investing activities was primarily due to a decrease in cash paid related to the Novitex Business Combination offset by cash spent on 2018 acquisitions.

Net cash used in investing activities was $452.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2017, compared to $31.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase of $420.8 million in cash used in investing activities was primarily due to cash paid in acquisition, partially offset by proceeds received from the sale of Meridian Consulting Group, LLC during the year ended December 31, 2017, as well as higher additions to intangible assets during the year ended December 31, 2016.

Financing Activities—Net cash used in financing activities was $1.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2018, compared to cash provided by financing activities of $475.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The

decrease of $477.6 million in cash provided by financing activities was primarily due to the 2017 retirement and proceeds from the credit facilities and lower stock issuance proceeds and shareholder contributions in 2017 versus 2018. The decrease was offset by lower debt extinguishment costs and principal payments on long-term obligations.

Net cash used in financing activities was $475.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2017, compared to net cash provided by financing activities of $43.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase of $519.0 million in cash provided by financing activities was primarily due to proceeds from issuance of stock and cash received from Quinpario in the amount of $231.4 million, as well as proceeds from a new credit facility of $1,310.5 million during the year ended December 31, 2017, which was partially offset by the retirement of the previous credit facilities of $1,055.7 million.

Indebtedness

As noted, in connection with the Novitex Business Combination on July 12, 2017, we acquired debt facilities and issued notes totaling $1.4 billion. Proceeds from the indebtedness were used to pay off credit facilities existing immediately before the Novitex Business Combination.

Senior Credit Facilities

On July 12, 2017, the Company entered into a First Lien Credit Agreement with Royal Bank of Canada, Credit Suisse AG, Cayman Islands Branch, Natixis, New York Branch and KKR Corporate Lending LLC (the "Credit Agreement") providing Exela Intermediate LLC, a wholly owned subsidiary of the Company, upon the terms and subject to the conditions set forth in the Credit Agreement, (i) a $350.0 million senior secured term loan maturing July 12, 2023 with an original issue discount of $7.0 million, and (ii) a $100.0 million senior secured revolving facility maturing July 12, 2022, none of which is currently drawn. The Credit Agreement provides for the following interest rates for borrowings under the senior secured term facility and senior secured revolving facility: at the Company's option, either (1) an adjusted LIBOR, subject to a 1.0% floor in the case of term loans, or (2) a base rate, in each case plus an applicable margin. The initial applicable margin for the senior secured term facility is 7.5% with respect to LIBOR borrowings and 6.5% with respect to base rate borrowings. The initial applicable margin for the senior secured revolving facility is 7.0% with respect to LIBOR borrowings and 6.0% with respect to base rate borrowings. The applicable margin for borrowings under the senior secured revolving facility is subject to step-downs based on leverage ratios. The senior secured term loan is subject to amortization payments, commencing on the last day of the first full fiscal quarter of the Company following the closing date, of 0.6% of the aggregate principal amount for each of the first eight payments and 1.3% of the aggregate principal amount for payments thereafter, with any balance due at maturity. As of December 31, 2018 and 2017 the interest rate applicable for the first lien senior secured term loan was 9.378% and 9.064%.

Senior Secured Notes

Upon the closing of the Novitex Business Combination on July 12, 2017, the Company issued $1.0 billion in aggregate principal amount of 10.0% First Priority Senior Secured Notes due 2023 (the "Notes"). The Notes are guaranteed by certain subsidiaries of the Company. The Notes bear interest at a rate of 10.0% per year. The Company pays interest on the Notes on January 15 and July 15 of each year, commencing on January 15, 2018. The Notes will mature on July 15, 2023.

Term Loan Repricing

On July 13, 2018, Exela successfully repriced the $343.4 million of term loans outstanding under its senior secured credit facilities (the "Repricing"). The Repricing was accomplished pursuant to a First Amendment to First Lien Credit Agreement (the "First Amendment"), dated as of July 13, 2018, by and among Exela Intermediate Holdings LLC, the Company, each "Subsidiary Loan Party" listed on the signature pages thereto, Royal Bank of Canada, as administrative agent, and each of the lenders party thereto, whereby the Company borrowed $343.4 million of refinancing term loans (the "Repricing Term Loans") to refinance the Company's existing senior secured term loans.

The Repricing Term Loans will bear interest at a rate per annum of, at the Company's option, either (a) a LIBOR rate determined by reference to the costs of funds for Eurodollar deposits for the interest period relevant to such borrowing, adjusted for certain additional costs, subject to a 1.00% floor, or (b) a base rate determined by reference to the highest of (i) the federal funds rate plus 0.50%, (ii) the prime rate and (iii) the one-month adjusted LIBOR plus 1.00%, in each case plus an applicable margin of 6.50% for LIBOR loans and 5.50% for base rate loans. The interest rates applicable to the Repricing Term Loans are 100 basis points lower than the interest rates applicable to the existing senior secured term loans that were incurred on July 12, 2017 pursuant to the First Lien Credit Agreement, by and among Exela Intermediate Holdings, LLC, the Company, Royal Bank of Canada, as administrative agent and collateral agent, and each of the lenders party thereto. The Repricing Term Loans will mature on July 12, 2023, the same maturity date as the existing senior secured term loans.

Incremental Term Loan

On July 13, 2018, the Company successfully borrowed an additional $30.0 million pursuant to incremental term loans (the "Incremental Term Loans") under the First Amendment. The proceeds of the Incremental Term Loans may be used by the Company for general corporate purposes and to pay fees and expenses in connection with the First Amendment. The interest rates applicable to the Incremental Term Loans are the same as those for the Repricing Term Loans.

The Company may voluntarily repay the Repricing Term Loans and the Incremental Term Loans (collectively, the "Term Loans") at any time, without prepayment premium or penalty, except in connection with a repricing event as described in the following sentence, subject to customary "breakage" costs with respect to LIBOR rate loans. Any refinancing of the Term Loans through the issuance of certain debt or any repricing amendment, in either case, that constitutes a "repricing event" applicable to the Term Loans resulting in a lower yield occurring at any time during the first six months after July 13, 2018 will be accompanied by a 1.00% prepayment premium or fee, as applicable.

Letters of Credit

As of December 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017, we had outstanding irrevocable letters of credit totaling approximately $20.6 million and $20.9 million, respectively, under the revolving credit facility.

Potential Future Transactions

We may, from time to time explore and evaluate possible strategic transactions, which may include joint ventures, as well as business combinations or the acquisition or disposition of assets. In order to pursue certain of these opportunities, additional funds will likely be required. Subject to applicable contractual restrictions, to obtain such financing, we may seek to use cash on hand, borrowings under our revolving credit facility, or we may seek to raise additional debt or equity financing through private placements or through underwritten offerings. There can be no assurance that we will enter into additional strategic transactions or alliances, nor do we know if we will be able to obtain the necessary financing for transactions that require additional funds on favorable terms, if at all. In addition, pursuant to the Registration Rights Agreement that we entered into in connection with the closing of the Novitex Business Combination, certain of our stockholders have the right to demand underwritten offerings of our Common Stock. We are exploring, and may from time to time in the future explore, with certain of those stockholders the possibility of an underwritten public offering of our Common Stock held by those stockholders. There can be no assurance as to whether or when an offering may be commenced or completed, or as to the actual size or terms of the offering.

Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates

The preparation of financial statements requires the use of judgments and estimates. Our critical accounting policies are described below to provide a better understanding of how we develop our assumptions and judgments about future events and related estimations and how they can impact our financial statements. A critical accounting estimate is one that requires subjective or complex estimates and assessments, and is fundamental to our results of operations. We base our estimates on historical experience and on various other assumptions we believe to be reasonable according to the current facts and circumstances, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities that are not readily apparent from other sources. We believe the current assumptions, judgments

and estimates used to determine amounts reflected in our consolidated financial statements are appropriate; however, actual results may differ under different conditions. This discussion and analysis should be read in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and related notes included in this document.

<u>Goodwill and other intangible assets:</u> Goodwill and other intangible assets are initially recorded at their fair values. Goodwill represents the excess of the purchase price of acquisitions over the fair value of the net assets acquired. Our goodwill at December 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017 was $708.3 million and $747.3 million, respectively. Goodwill and other intangible assets not subject to amortization are tested for impairment annually or more frequently if events or changes in circumstances indicate that the asset might be impaired. Intangible assets with finite useful lives are amortized either on a straight-line basis over the asset's estimated useful life or on a basis that reflects the pattern in which the economic benefits of the intangible assets are realized.

<u>Outsourced contract costs:</u> In connection with services arrangements, we incur and capitalize costs to originate long-term contracts. Certain initial direct costs of an arrangement are capitalized and amortized over the contractual service period of the arrangement to cost of services. We regularly review costs to determine appropriateness for deferral in accordance with the relevant accounting guidance. Key estimates and assumptions that we must make include projecting future cash flows in order to assess the recoverability of deferred costs. To assess recoverability, cash flows are projected over the remaining life and compared to the carrying amount of contract related assets, including the unamortized deferred cost balance. Such estimates require judgment and assumptions, which are based upon the professional knowledge and experience of our personnel. A significant change in an estimate or assumption on one or more contracts could have a material effect on our results of operations.

<u>Impairment of goodwill, long-lived and other intangible assets:</u> Long-lived assets, such as property and equipment and finite-lived intangible assets are evaluated for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that their carrying value may not be recoverable. Recoverability is measured by a comparison of their carrying amount to the estimated undiscounted cash flows to be generated by those assets. If the undiscounted cash flows are less than the carrying amount, we record impairment losses for the excess of the carrying value over the estimated fair value. Fair value is determined, in part, by the estimated cash flows to be generated by those assets. Our cash flow estimates are based upon, among other things, historical results adjusted to reflect our best estimate of future market rates, and operating performance. Development of future cash flows also requires us to make assumptions and to apply judgment, including timing of future expected cash flows, using the appropriate discount rates, and determining salvage values. The estimate of fair value represents our best estimates of these factors, and is subject to variability. Assets are generally grouped at the lowest level of identifiable cash flows, which is the reporting unit level for us. Changes to our key assumptions related to future performance and other economic factors could adversely affect our impairment valuation.

We test our indefinite lived intangible assets on October 1st of each year, or more frequently if events or changes in circumstances indicate that the assets may be impaired. When performing the impairment test, we have the option of performing a qualitative or quantitative assessment to determine if an impairment has occurred. A quantitative assessment requires comparison of fair value of the asset to its carrying value. We utilize the Income Approach, specifically the Relief-from-Royalty method, which has the basic tenet that a user of that intangible asset would have to make a stream of payments to the owner of the asset in return for the rights to use that asset. By acquiring the intangible asset, the user avoids these payments. Application of the indefinite lived intangible asset impairment test requires judgment, including determination of royalty rates, and projecting revenue attributable to the assets in order to determine fair value. On October 1, 2017, we elected to bypass the qualitative assessment and perform a quantitative assessment of the carrying value of our indefinite-lived intangible assets as of our annual impairment testing date. As a result of this analysis, $6.3 million of impairment was recorded due to the decline in the valuation of trade names. Additionally, later during the fourth quarter of 2017, due to a change in our anticipated marketing strategy for 2018 and expected use of certain names, we performed another quantitative impairment test as of December 31, 2017. As a result of this analysis, $33.0 million of additional impairment was recorded due to the decline in the valuation of trade names. As part of the analysis, we also reconsidered the expected useful lives of certain indefinite-lived trade names. We reduced the estimated useful lives of those trade names to one year, and will commence amortization over the remaining useful life. On October 1, 2018, we performed our annual impairment test and the carrying value of one trade name exceeded the calculated fair value. As such, an impairment charge of $3.7 million was recorded as of December 31, 2018.

We conduct our annual goodwill impairment tests on October 1st of each year, or more frequently if indicators of impairment exist. When performing the annual impairment test, we have the option of performing a qualitative or quantitative assessment to determine if an impairment has occurred. If a qualitative assessment indicates that it is more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying amount, we would be required to perform a quantitative impairment test for goodwill. A quantitative test requires comparison of fair value of the reporting unit to its carrying value, including goodwill. We use a combination of the Guideline Public Company Method of the Market Approach and the Discounted Cash Flow Method of the Income Approach to determine the reporting unit fair value. For the Guideline Public Company Method, our annual impairment test utilizes discounted cash flow projections using weighted average cost of capital calculations based on capital structures of publicly traded peer companies. For the Discounted Cash Flow Method, our annual impairment test utilizes discounted cash flow projections using our weighted average cost of capital calculation. If the fair value of goodwill at the reporting unit level is less than its carrying value, an impairment loss is recorded for the amount by which a reporting unit's carrying amount exceeds its fair value, limited to the total amount of goodwill allocated to that reporting unit. During the year ended December 31, 2018, due to a decline in revenues and operations in our LLPS reporting unit, we elected to bypass the qualitative assessment and perform a quantitative impairment assessment of the carrying value of our goodwill. As a result of the analysis, we recorded an impairment charge of $44.4 million, including taxes, for the LLPS reporting unit's goodwill and trade names.

Application of the goodwill impairment test requires judgment, including the identification of reporting units, allocation of assets and liabilities to reporting units, and determination of fair value. The determination of reporting unit fair value is sensitive to the amount of EBITDA generated by us, as well as the EBITDA multiple used in the calculation. Unanticipated changes, including immaterial revisions, to these assumptions could result in a provision for impairment in a future period. Given the nature of these evaluations and their application to specific assets and time frames, it is not possible to reasonably quantify the impact of changes in these assumptions.

Revenue: We account for revenue in accordance with ASC 606. A performance obligation is a promise in a contract to transfer a distinct good or service to the customer, and is the unit of account in ASC 606. Revenue is measured as the amount of consideration we expect to receive in exchange for transferring goods or providing services. The contract transaction price is allocated to each distinct performance obligation and recognized as revenue when, or as, the performance obligation is satisfied. All of our material sources of revenue are derived from contracts with customers, primarily relating to the provision of business and transaction processing services within each of our segments. We do not have any significant extended payment terms, as payment is received shortly after goods are delivered or services are provided. *Refer to Note 2—Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies* for additional information regarding our revenue recognition policy.

If a contract involves the provision of a single element, revenue is generally recognized when the product or service is provided and the amount earned is not contingent upon any future event. Revenue from time and materials arrangements is recognized as the services are performed.

Multiple element arrangements

We also enter into multiple element arrangements involving various combinations. The deliverables within these arrangements are evaluated at contract inception to determine whether they represent separate units of accounting, and if so, contract consideration is allocated to each deliverable based on relative selling price. With respect to arrangements including tangible products containing both software and non-software components that function together to deliver the product's essential functionality, the relative selling price is determined using vendor specific objective evidence ("VSOE") of fair value, third-party evidence or best estimate of selling price. For our multiple element arrangements that are comprised solely of software and software elements, revenue is allocated to the various elements based on VSOE of fair value and the residual method to allocate the arrangement consideration. Revenue is then recognized in accordance with the appropriate revenue recognition guidance applicable to the respective elements.

If the multiple element arrangements criteria are not met, the arrangement is accounted for as one unit of accounting which would result in revenue being recognized on a straight-line basis over the period of delivery or being deferred until the earlier of when such criteria are met or when the last element is delivered.

Income Taxes: We account for income taxes by using the asset and liability method. We account for income taxes regarding uncertain tax positions and recognize interest and penalties related to uncertain tax positions in income tax benefit/ (expense) in the consolidated statements of operations.

The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act ("TCJA") was signed by the President of the United States and enacted into law on December 22, 2017. The TCJA significantly changes U.S. tax law by reducing the U.S. corporate income tax rate to 21% from 35%, adopting a territorial tax regime, creating new taxes on certain foreign sourced earnings and imposing a one-time transition tax on the undistributed earnings of certain non-U.S. subsidiaries.

Accounting Standards Codification Topic 740, Income Taxes ("ASC 740") requires companies to account for the tax effects of changes in income tax rates and laws in the period in which legislation is enacted (December 22, 2017). ASC 740 does not specifically address accounting and disclosure guidance in connection with the income tax effects of the TCJA. Consequently, on December 22, 2017, the Securities and Exchange Commission staff issued Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118 ("SAB 118"), to address the application of ASC 740 in the reporting period that includes the date the TCJA was enacted. SAB 118 allows companies a reasonable period of time to complete the accounting for the income tax effects of the TCJA.

Deferred income taxes are recognized on the tax consequences of temporary differences by applying enacted statutory tax rates applicable in future years to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts and the tax bases of existing assets and liabilities, as determined under tax laws and rates. A valuation allowance is provided when it is more likely than not that all or some portion of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. Due to numerous ownership changes, we are subject to limitations on existing net operating losses under Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code (the Code). In the event we determine that we would be able to realize deferred tax assets that have valuation allowances established, an adjustment to the net deferred tax assets would be recognized as a component of income tax expense through continuing operations.

We engage in transactions (such as acquisitions) in which the tax consequences may be subject to uncertainty and examination by the varying taxing authorities. Significant judgment is required by us in assessing and estimating the tax consequences of these transactions. While our tax returns are prepared and based on our interpretation of tax laws and regulations, in the normal course of business the tax returns are subject to examination by the various taxing authorities. Such examinations may result in future assessments of additional tax, interest and penalties. For purposes of our income tax provision, a tax benefit is not recognized if the tax position is not more likely than not to be sustained based solely on its technical merits. Considerable judgment is involved in determining which tax positions are more likely than not to be sustained.

Business Combinations: We allocate the total cost of an acquisition to the underlying assets based on their respective estimated fair values. Determination of fair values involves significant estimates and assumptions about highly subjective variables, including future cash flows, discount rates, and asset lives. The estimates of the fair values of assets and liabilities acquired are based upon assumptions believed to be reasonable and, when appropriate, include assistance from independent third-party valuation firms.

Because we are primarily a services business, our acquisitions typically result in significant amounts of goodwill and other intangible assets. Fair value estimates and calculations for these acquisitions will affect the amount of amortization expense, or possible impairment related charges recognized in future periods. We base our fair value estimates on assumptions we believe are reasonable, but recognize that the assumptions are inherently uncertain.

JOBS Act

On April 5, 2012, the JOBS Act was signed into law. The JOBS Act contains provisions that, among other things, relax certain reporting requirements for qualifying public companies. We had previously elected to delay the adoption of new or revised accounting standards as an emerging growth company; however, we no longer qualify as an emerging growth company and will be required to comply with new or revised accounting standards using public company effective dates.

Recently Adopted and Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements

See Note 2 to the consolidated financial statements.

Internal Controls and Procedures

As a publicly traded company, we are required to comply with the SEC's rules implementing Section 302 and 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, which require management to certify financial and other information in our quarterly and annual reports and provide an annual management report on the effectiveness of controls over financial reporting. However, as we completed the Novitex Business Combination on July 12, 2017, it was not possible for us to conduct an assessment of the accounting acquirer's internal control over financial reporting in the period between the consummation date of the reverse acquisition and the date of management's assessment of internal control over financial reporting required by Item 308(a) of Regulation S-K for the year ended December 31, 2017. For the year ended December 31, 2018 see item 9A. Controls and Procedures for management's report on the effectiveness of internal controls.

Off Balance Sheet Arrangements

At December 31, 2018, we had no material off balance sheet arrangements, except for operating leases. As such, we are not materially exposed to any financing, liquidity, market or credit risk that could arise if we had engaged in such financing arrangements. Our operating leases are composed of various office and industrial buildings, machinery, equipment, and vehicles. As of December 31, 2018 and 2017, our total future minimum lease payments under non-cancelable operating leases were $150.3 million and $129.6 million.

ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURE ABOUT MARKET RISK

Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosure About Market Risk

Interest Rate Risk

At December 31, 2018, we had $1,337.8 million of debt outstanding, with a weighted average interest rate of 9.589%. Interest is calculated under the terms of our credit agreement based on the greatest of certain specified base rates plus an applicable margin that varies based on certain factors. Assuming no change in the amount outstanding, the impact on interest expense of a 1% increase or decrease in the assumed weighted average interest rate would be approximately 13.3 million per year. In order to mitigate interest rate fluctuations with respect to term loan borrowings under the Credit Agreement, in November 2017, we entered into a three year, one-month LIBOR interest rate swap contract with a notional amount of $347.8 million, which is the remaining principal balance of the term loan. The swap contract will swap out the floating rate interest risk related to the LIBOR with a fixed interest rate of 1.9275% and was effective on January 12, 2018.

The interest rate swap, which is used to manage our exposure to interest rate movements and other identified risks, was not designated as a hedge. As such, changes in the fair value of the derivative are recorded directly in earnings and were equal to $2.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2018.

Foreign Currency Risk

We are exposed to foreign currency risks that arise from normal business operations. These risks include transaction gains and losses associated with intercompany loans with foreign subsidiaries and transactions denominated in currencies other than a location's functional currency. Contracts are denominated in currencies of major industrial countries.

Market Risk

We are exposed to market risks primarily from changes in interest rates and foreign currency exchange rates. We do not use derivatives for trading purposes, to generate income or to engage in speculative activity.

ITEM 8. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA

The following financial statements and schedules are included herein:

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Stockholders and Board of Directors
Exela Technologies, Inc.:

Opinion on the Consolidated Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Exela Technologies, Inc. and subsidiaries (the Company) as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss, stockholders' deficit, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 2018 (collectively, the consolidated financial statements). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 2018, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB), the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018, based on criteria established in *Internal Control – Integrated Framework (2013)* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission, and our report dated March 19, 2019 expressed an adverse opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

Change in Accounting Principle

As discussed in Note 2 to the consolidated financial statements, the Company has changed its method of accounting for revenue recognition in 2018 due to the adoption of Accounting Standard Update no. 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (ASC 606).*

Basis for Opinion

These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ KPMG LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2013.

Dallas, Texas
March 19, 2019

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Stockholders and Board of Directors
Exela Technologies, Inc.:

Opinion on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

We have audited Exela Technologies, Inc. and subsidiaries' (the Company) internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018, based on criteria established in *Internal Control - Integrated Framework (2013)* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. In our opinion, because of the effect of the material weaknesses, described below, on the achievement of the objectives of the control criteria, the Company has not maintained effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018, based on criteria established in *Internal Control - Integrated Framework (2013)* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission ("COSO 2013 Framework").

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB), the consolidated balance sheet of the Company as of December 31, 2018, the related statements of operations, comprehensive loss, stockholders' deficit, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes (collectively, the consolidated financial statements), and our report dated March 19, 2019 expressed an unqualified opinion on those consolidated financial statements.

A material weakness is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over financial reporting, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the company's annual or interim financial statements will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis. The following material weaknesses have been identified and included in management's assessment:

- Ineffective control environment related to:
  - insufficient internal resources with appropriate knowledge and expertise
  - ineffective supervision of control implementation activities provided by third party contractors; and
  - ineffective policies and procedures to hold people accountable for their financial reporting and related internal control responsibilities and insufficient training of personnel on the COSO 2013 Framework
- Ineffective risk assessment process related to:
  - failure to identify and evaluate risks of misstatement over certain financial reporting processes; and
  - failure to determine modifications necessary in certain financial reporting processes and related control activities due to changes in the application of U.S. generally accepted accounting principles and in connection with a business acquisition.
- Ineffective information and communications controls over the reliability and timeliness of information available to financial reporting personnel.
- Ineffective monitoring activities related to the five COSO 2013 Framework components and underlying principles and the timely remediation of existing control deficiencies.
- Ineffective written policies and procedures and documentation to demonstrate the consistent and timely operation of the controls.
- Ineffective general information technology controls and automated controls:
  - Ineffective complementary entity user controls and ineffective certain general information technology controls related to payroll, revenue and procurement transactions processed by certain service organizations at some or all components;
  - Ineffective general information technology controls over IT applications supporting procurement and leasing financial reporting processes at certain components; and

    - Ineffective automated process-level controls and manual controls that are dependent upon the information derived from those affected IT systems
- Ineffective control activities related to the following consolidated accounts:
    - the completeness, existence and accuracy of the financial statement close and reporting process and financial statement disclosures;
    - the completeness, existence and accuracy of revenue and deferred revenue transactions, including customer deposits and accounts receivable;
    - the completeness, existence and accuracy of the procurement of goods and services and invoice processing and the completeness and accuracy and presentation of accounts payable and accrued liabilities and operating expenses;
    - the completeness, existence, accuracy and presentation of payroll and related expenses and accrued compensation and benefits;
    - the completeness, existence and accuracy of lease expense, capital lease obligations and the presentation of operating and capital lease disclosures; and
    - the completeness and accuracy of outsource contract cost additions in the current year.
- Ineffective control activities related to:
    - the completeness, existence and accuracy of fixed assets additions and disposals and related depreciation at the Novitex component; and
    - the completeness and accuracy of restricted cash and obligation for claim payments and the presentation of restricted cash at the Rust component.

The material weaknesses were considered in determining the nature, timing, and extent of audit tests applied in our audit of the 2018 consolidated financial statements, and this report does not affect our report on those consolidated financial statements.

The Company acquired Asterion International Group during 2018, and management excluded from its assessment of the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018, Asterion International Group's internal control over financial reporting associated with total assets of $18 million and total revenues of $59.7 million included in the consolidated financial statements of the Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 2018. Our audit of internal control over financial reporting of the Company also excluded an evaluation of the internal control over financial reporting of Asterion International Group.

Basis for Opinion

The Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, included in the accompanying Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting in Item 9A. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects. Our audit of internal control over financial reporting included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, and testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk. Our audit also included performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Definition and Limitations of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

/s/ KPMG LLP

Dallas, Texas
March 19, 2019

Exela Technologies, Inc. and Subsidiaries
Consolidated Balance Sheets
For the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017
(in thousands of United States dollars except share and per share amounts)

	December 31, 2018	December 31, 2017
Assets		
Current assets		
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 25,615	$ 39,000
Restricted cash	18,239	42,489
Accounts receivable, net of allowance for doubtful accounts of $4,359 and $3,725 respectively	270,812	229,704
Inventories, net	16,220	11,922
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	25,015	24,596
Total current assets	**355,901**	**347,711**
Property, plant and equipment, net	132,986	132,908
Goodwill	708,258	747,325
Intangible assets, net	407,021	464,984
Deferred income tax assets	16,225	9,019
Other noncurrent assets	19,391	12,891
Total assets	**$ 1,639,782**	**$ 1,714,838**
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity (Deficit)		
Liabilities		
Current liabilities		
Accounts payable	$ 99,853	$ 81,263
Related party payables	7,735	14,445
Income tax payable	1,996	3,612
Accrued liabilities	66,008	49,383
Accrued compensation and benefits	54,583	46,925
Accrued interest	49,071	55,102
Customer deposits	34,235	31,656
Deferred revenue	16,504	12,709
Obligation for claim payment	56,002	42,489
Current portion of capital lease obligations	17,498	15,611
Current portion of long-term debt	29,237	20,565
Total current liabilities	**432,722**	**373,760**
Long-term debt, net of current maturities	1,306,423	1,276,094
Capital lease obligations, net of current maturities	26,738	25,958
Pension liability	25,269	25,496
Deferred income tax liabilities	11,212	5,362
Long-term income tax liability	3,024	3,470
Other long-term liabilities	15,400	14,704
Total liabilities	**1,820,788**	**1,724,844**
Commitment and Contingencies (Note 12)		
Stockholders' equity (deficit)		
Common stock, par value of $0.0001 per share; 1,600,000,000 shares authorized; 152,692,140 shares issued and 150,142,955 shares outstanding at December 31, 2018 and 150,578,451 shares issued and 150,529,151 outstanding at December 31, 2017	15	15
Preferred stock, par value of $0.0001 per share; 20,000,000 shares authorized; 4,569,233 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2018 and 6,194,233 shares issued or outstanding at December 31, 2017	1	1
Additional paid in capital	482,018	482,018
Less: common stock held in treasury, at cost; 2,549,185 shares at December 31, 2018 and 49,300 shares at December 31, 2017	(10,342)	(249)
Equity-based compensation	41,731	34,085
Accumulated deficit	(678,563)	(514,628)
Accumulated other comprehensive loss:		
Foreign currency translation adjustment	(6,565)	(194)
Unrealized pension actuarial losses, net of tax	(9,301)	(11,054)
Total accumulated other comprehensive loss	(15,866)	(11,248)
Total stockholders' deficit	**(181,006)**	**(10,006)**
Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit	**$ 1,639,782**	**$ 1,714,838**

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

Exela Technologies, Inc. and Subsidiaries
Consolidated Statement of Operations
For the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016
(in thousands of United States dollars except share and per share amounts)

	Year Ended December 31, 2018	2017	2016
Revenue	$ 1,586,222	$ 1,152,324	$ 789,926
Cost of revenue (exclusive of depreciation and amortization)	1,209,874	829,143	519,121
Selling, general and administrative expenses	184,651	220,955	130,437
Depreciation and amortization	145,485	98,890	79,639
Impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets	48,127	69,437	—
Related party expense	4,334	33,431	10,493
Operating (loss) income	**(6,249)**	**(99,532)**	**50,236**
Other expense (income), net:			
Interest expense, net	153,095	128,489	109,414
Loss on extinguishment of debt	1,067	35,512	—
Sundry expense (income), net	(3,271)	2,295	712
Other income, net	(3,030)	(1,297)	—
Net loss before income taxes	**(154,110)**	**(264,531)**	**(59,890)**
Income tax (expense) benefit	(8,407)	60,246	11,787
Net loss	**$ (162,517)**	**$ (204,285)**	**$ (48,103)**
Dividend equivalent on Series A Preferred Stock related to beneficial conversion feature	—	(16,375)	—
Cumulative dividends for Series A Preferred Stock	(3,655)	(2,489)	—
Net loss attributable to common stockholders	**$ (166,172)**	**$ (223,149)**	**$ (48,103)**
Loss per share:			
Basic and diluted	$ (1.09)	$ (2.08)	$ (0.75)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

Exela Technologies, Inc. and Subsidiaries
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss
For the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016
(in thousands of United States dollars)

	Years ended December 31, 2018	2017	2016
Net Loss	**$ (162,517)**	**$ (204,285)**	**$ (48,103)**
Other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax			
Foreign currency translation adjustments	(6,371)	3,353	(132)
Unrealized pension actuarial gains (losses), net of tax	1,753	1,285	(7,263)
Total other comprehensive loss, net of tax	**$ (167,135)**	**$ (199,647)**	**$ (55,498)**

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

Exela Technologies, Inc. and Subsidiaries
Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Deficit
December 31, 2016
(in thousands of United States dollars except share and per share amounts)

	Common Stock		Preferred Stock		Treasury Stock		Additional	Equity-Based	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss		Accumulated	Total Stockholders'
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	Paid in Capital	Compensation	Foreign Currency Translation Adjustment	Unrealized Pension Actuarial Losses, net of tax	Deficit	Deficit
Balances at January 1, 2016	**64,024,557**	**$ 6**	**—**	**$ —**	**—**	**$ —**	**$ (57,395)**	**$ 20,256**	**$ (3,415)**	**$ (5,076)**	**$ (245,865)**	**$ (291,489)**
Net loss January 1 to December 31, 2016	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(48,103)	(48,103)
Equity-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	7,086	—	—	—	7,086
Foreign currency translation adjustment	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(132)	—	—	(132)
Net realized pension actuarial gains, net of tax	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(7,263)	—	(7,263)
Balances at December 31, 2016	**64,024,557**	**$ 6**	**—**	**$ —**	**—**	**$ —**	**$ (57,395)**	**$ 27,342**	**$ (3,547)**	**$ (12,339)**	**$ (293,968)**	**$ (339,901)**

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

Exela Technologies, Inc. and Subsidiaries
Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Deficit
December 31, 2017
(in thousands of United States dollars except share and per share amounts)

	Common Stock		Preferred Stock		Treasury Stock		Additional	Equity-Based	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss		Accumulated	Total
									Foreign Currency Translation	Unrealized Pension Actuarial Losses,		Stockholders'
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	Paid in Capital	Compensation	Adjustment	net of tax	Deficit	Deficit
Balances at January 1, 2017	**64,024,557**	**$ 6**	**—**	**$ —**	**—**	**$ —**	**$ (57,395)**	**$ 27,342**	**$ (3,547)**	**$ (12,339)**	**$ (293,968)**	**$ (339,901)**
Net loss January 1 to December 31, 2017	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(204,285)	(204,285)
Equity-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6,743	—	—	—	6,743
Foreign currency translation adjustment	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	3,353	—	—	3,353
Net realized pension actuarial gains, net of tax	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1,285	—	1,285
Merger recapitalization	16,575,443	2	—	—	—	—	20,546	—	—	—	—	20,548
Shares issued to acquire Novitex (refer to Note 3)	30,600,000	3	—	—	—	—	244,797	—	—	—	—	244,800
Issuance\Conversion of Quinpario shares	12,093,331	1	—	—	—	—	22,358	—	—	—	—	22,359
Sale of common shares at July 12, 2017	18,757,942	3	—	—	—	—	130,860	—	—	—	—	130,863
Issuance of Series A Preferred Stock	—	—	9,194,233	1	—	—	73,553	—	—	—	—	73,554
Shares issued for advisory services and underwriting fees	3,609,375	—	—	—	—	—	28,573	—	—	—	—	28,573
Conversion of Series A Preferred Stock to common shares	3,667,803	—	(3,000,000)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Shares issued for HandsOn Global Management contract termination fee	1,250,000	—	—	—	—	—	10,000	—	—	—	—	10,000
Equity issuance expenses	—	—	—	—	—	—	(7,649)	—	—	—	—	(7,649)
Adjustment for beneficial conversion feature of Series A Preferred Stock (refer to Note 2)	—	—	—	—	—	—	16,375	—	—	—	(16,375)	—
Treasury stock purchases	(49,300)	—	—	—	49,300	(249)	—	—	—	—	—	(249)
Balances at December 31, 2017	**150,529,151**	**$ 15**	**6,194,233**	**1**	**49,300**	**$ (249)**	**$ 482,018**	**$ 34,085**	**$ (194)**	**$ (11,054)**	**$ (514,628)**	**$ (10,006)**

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

Exela Technologies, Inc. and Subsidiaries
Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Deficit
December 31, 2018
(in thousands of United States dollars except share and per share amounts)

	Common Stock		Preferred Stock		Treasury Stock		Additional	Equity-Based	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss		Accumulated	Total
									Foreign Currency Translation	Unrealized Pension Actuarial Losses,		Stockholders'
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	Paid in Capital	Compensation	Adjustment	net of tax	Deficit	Deficit
Balances at January 1, 2018	**150,529,151**	**$ 15**	**6,194,233**	**$ 1**	**49,300**	**$ (249)**	**$ 482,018**	**$ 34,085**	**$ (194)**	**$ (11,054)**	**$ (514,628)**	**$ (10,006)**
Implementation of ASU 2014-09 (Note 2)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(1,418)	(1,418)
Net loss January 1 to December 31, 2018	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(162,517)	(162,517)
Equity-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6,562	—	—	—	6,562
Foreign currency translation adjustment	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(6,371)	—	—	(6,371)
Net realized pension actuarial gains, net of tax	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1,753	—	1,753
RSU's exercised	126,922	—	—	—	—	—	—	256	—	—	—	256
Stock option expense	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	828	—	—	—	828
Preferred shares converted to common	1,986,767	—	(1,625,000)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Shares repurchased	(2,499,885)	—	—	—	2,499,885	(10,093)	—	—	—	—	—	(10,093)
Balances at December 31, 2018	**150,142,955**	**$ 15**	**4,569,233**	**$ 1**	**2,549,185**	**$ (10,342)**	**$ 482,018**	**$ 41,731**	**$ (6,565)**	**$ (9,301)**	**$ (678,563)**	**$ (181,006)**

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

Exela Technologies, Inc. and Subsidiaries
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows
For the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016
(in thousands of United States dollars unless otherwise stated)

	Years ended December 31,		
	2018	**2017**	**2016**
Cash flows from operating activities			
Net loss	$ (162,517)	$ (204,285)	$ (48,103)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss			
Depreciation and amortization	145,485	98,890	79,639
Fees paid in stock	—	23,875	—
HGM contract termination fee paid in stock	—	10,000	—
Original issue discount and debt issuance cost amortization	10,913	12,280	13,684
Impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets	48,127	69,437	—
Provision for doubtful accounts	2,767	500	756
Deferred income tax provision (benefit)	3,352	(66,723)	(15,729)
Share-based compensation expense	7,647	6,743	7,086
Foreign currency remeasurement	(1,180)	1,382	193
Loss on sale of assets	2,095	399	2,245
Fair value adjustment for interest rate swap	(2,540)	(1,297)	—
Change in operating assets and liabilities, net of effect from acquisitions			
Accounts receivable	(19,319)	(4,832)	20,801
Prepaid expenses and other assets	(2,820)	2,628	4,969
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	5,157	69,551 **(1)**	9,033 **(1)**
Related party payables	(6,710)	4,907	(2,427)
Net cash provided by operating activities	**30,457**	**23,455 (1)**	**72,147 (1)**
Cash flows from investing activities			
Purchase of property, plant and equipment	(20,072)	(14,440)	(7,926)
Additions to internally developed software	(7,438)	(7,843)	(13,017)
Additions to outsourcing contract costs	(7,552)	(10,992)	(14,636)
Cash acquired in TransCentra acquisition	—	—	3,351
Proceeds from sale of Assets	3,568	4,607	626
Cash acquired in Quinpario reverse merger	—	91	—
Cash paid in acquisition, net of cash received	(34,810)	(423,797)	—
Net cash used in investing activities	**(66,304)**	**(452,374)**	**(31,602)**
Cash flows from financing activities			
Change in bank overdraft	—	(210)	(1,331)
Loss on extinguishment of debt	1,067	35,512 **(2)**	—
Proceeds from issuance of stock	—	204,417	—
Cash received from Quinpario	—	27,031	—
Repurchase of Common Stock	(7,221)	(249)	—
Proceeds from financing obligation	11,557	3,116	5,429
Contribution from Shareholders	—	20,548	—
Proceeds from new credit facility	30,000	1,320,500	—
Retirement of previous credit facilities	—	(1,055,736)	—
Cash paid for debt issuance costs	(1,094)	(39,837)	—
Cash paid for equity issue costs	(7,500)	(149)	—
Borrowings from revolver and swing-line loan	30,000	72,600	53,700
Repayments from revolver and swing line loan	(30,000)	(72,500)	(53,200)
Principal payments on long-term obligations	(28,719)	(39,316)	(47,853)
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	**(1,910)**	**475,727**	**(43,255)**
Effect of exchange rates on cash	122	429	(2,059)
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	**(37,635)**	**47,237 (1)**	**(4,769)(1)**
Cash and cash equivalents			
Beginning of period	81,489	34,252 **(1)**	39,021 **(1)**
End of period	$ 43,854	$ 81,489 **(1)**	$ 34,252 **(1)**
Supplemental cash flow data:			
Income tax payments, net of refunds received	$ 7,827	$ 5,711	$ 3,771
Interest paid	146,076	69,622	96,166
Noncash investing and financing activities:			
Assets acquired through capital lease arrangements	14,920	6,973	11,925
Leasehold improvements funded by lessor	1,565	146	5,186
Issuance of common stock as consideration for Novitex	—	244,800	—
Accrued capital expenditures	2,820	1,621	580
Dividend equivalent on Series A Preferred Stock	—	16,375	—
Liability assumed of Quinpario	—	4,672	—

(1) Balances for these items differ from previously reported balances due to the adoption of ASU no. 2016-18, *Statement of Cash Flows: Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments (Topic 230),* see Note 2.

(2) Exela reclassified 'Loss on extinguishment of debt' from operating to financing activities due to the adoption of ASU no. 2016-15, *Statement of Cash Flows: Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments,* see Note 2.

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

1. Description of the Business

Organization

Exela Technologies, Inc. (the "Company" or "Exela") is a global provider of transaction processing solutions, enterprise information management, document management and digital business process services. The Company provides mission-critical information and transaction processing solutions services to clients across three major industry verticals: (1) Information & Transaction Processing, (2) Healthcare Solutions, and (3) Legal and Loss Prevention Services. The Company manages information and document driven business processes and offers solutions and services to fulfill specialized knowledge-based processing and consulting requirements, enabling clients to concentrate on their core competencies. Through its outsourcing solutions, the Company enables businesses to streamline their internal and external communications and workflows.

The Company was originally incorporated in Delaware on July 15, 2014 as a special purpose acquisition company under the name Quinpario Acquisition Corp 2 ("Quinpario") for the purpose of effecting a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination involving Quinpario and one or more businesses or entities. On July 12, 2017 (the "Closing"), the Company consummated its business combination with SourceHOV Holdings, Inc. ("SourceHOV") and Novitex Holdings, Inc. ("Novitex") pursuant to the Business Combination Agreement and Consent, Waiver and Amendment to the Business Combination Agreement, dated February 21, 2017 and June 15, 2017, respectively (the "Novitex Business Combination"). In connection with the Closing, the Company changed its name from Quinpario Acquisition Corp 2 to Exela Technologies, Inc. Unless the context otherwise requires, the "Company" refers to the combined company and its subsidiaries following the Novitex Business Combination, "Quinpario" refers to the Company prior to the closing of the Novitex Business Combination, "SourceHOV" refers to SourceHOV prior to the Novitex Business Combination and "Novitex" refers to Novitex prior to the Novitex Business Combination. Refer to Note 3 for further discussion of the Novitex Business Combination.

2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

The following is a summary of the significant accounting policies consistently applied in the preparation of the accompanying consolidated financial statements.

Basis of Presentation

The accompanying consolidated financial statements and related notes to the consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States ("U.S. GAAP") and in accordance with the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC").

The Novitex Business Combination has been accounted for as a reverse merger in accordance with U.S. GAAP. For accounting purposes, SourceHOV was deemed to be the accounting acquirer, Quinpario was the legal acquirer, and Novitex is considered the acquired company. In conjunction with the Novitex Business Combination, outstanding shares of SourceHOV were converted into Common Stock of the Company, par value $0.0001 per share, shown as a recapitalization, and the net assets of Quinpario were acquired at historical cost, with no goodwill or other intangible assets recorded. The consolidated assets and liabilities as of December 31, 2016, and results of operations for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 are those of SourceHOV. Quinpario's assets and liabilities, which include net cash from the trust of $27.0 million and accrued fees payable of $4.8 million, and results of operations are consolidated with SourceHOV beginning on the Closing. The shares and corresponding capital amounts and earnings per share available to holders of the Company's Common Stock, prior to the Novitex Business Combination, have been retroactively restated as shares reflecting the exchange ratio established in the Novitex Business Combination. The presented financial information for the year ended December 31, 2017 includes the financial information and activities for SourceHOV for the period January 1, 2017 to December 31, 2017 (365 days) as well as the financial information and activities of Novitex for the period July 13, 2017 to December 31, 2017 (172 days).

Principles of Consolidation

The accompanying consolidated financial statements and related notes to the consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its wholly-owned subsidiaries. All significant intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated in consolidation. In addition, the Company evaluates its relationships with other entities to identify whether they are variable interest entities as defined by the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") 810-10, Consolidation and whether the Company is the primary beneficiary. Consolidation is required if both of these criteria are met./

The preparation of consolidated financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period.

Estimates and judgments relied upon in preparing these consolidated financial statements include revenue recognition for multiple element arrangements, allowance for doubtful accounts, income taxes, depreciation, amortization, employee benefits, equity-based compensation, contingencies, goodwill, intangible assets, fair value of assets and liabilities acquired in acquisitions, and asset and liability valuations. The Company regularly assesses these estimates and records changes in estimates in the period in which they become known. The Company bases its estimates on historical experience and various other assumptions that the Company believes to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

Segment Reporting

The Company consists of the following three segments:

1. *Information & Transaction Processing Solutions ("ITPS").* ITPS provides industry-specific solutions for banking and financial services, including lending solutions for mortgages and auto loans, and banking solutions for clearing, anti-money laundering, sanctions, and interbank cross-border settlement; property and casualty insurance solutions for origination, enrollments, claims processing, and benefits administration communications; public sector solutions for income tax processing, benefits administration, and record management; multi-industry solutions for payment processing and reconciliation, integrated receivables and payables management, document logistics and location services, records management and electronic storage of data, documents; and software, hardware, professional services and maintenance related to information and transaction processing automation, among others.

2. *Healthcare Solutions ("HS").* HS offerings include revenue cycle solutions, integrated accounts payable and accounts receivable, and information management for both the healthcare payer and provider markets. Payer service offerings include claims processing, claims adjudication and auditing services, enrollment processing and policy management, and scheduling and prescription management. Provider service offerings include medical coding and insurance claim generation, underpayment audit and recovery, and medical records management.

3. *Legal and Loss Prevention Services ("LLPS").* LLPS solutions include processing of legal claims for class action and mass action settlement administrations, involving project management support, notification and outreach to claimants, collection, analysis and distribution of settlement funds. Additionally, LLPS provides data and analytical services in the context of litigation consulting, economic and statistical analysis, expert witness services, and revenue recovery services for delinquent accounts receivable.

Cash and Cash Equivalents

Cash and cash equivalents include cash deposited with financial institutions and liquid investments with original maturity dates equal to or less than three months. All bank deposits and money market accounts are considered cash and cash equivalents. The Company holds cash and cash equivalents at major financial institutions, which often exceed Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation insured limits. Historically, the Company has not experienced any losses due to such bank depository concentration.

Certificates of deposit and fixed deposits whose original maturity is greater than three months and is one year or less are classified as short-term investments and certificates of deposit and fixed deposits whose maturity is greater than one year at the balance sheet date are classified as non-current assets in the consolidated balance sheets. The purchase of any certificates of deposit or fixed deposits that are classified as short-term investments or non-current assets appear in the investing section of the consolidated statements of cash flows.

Restricted Cash

As part of the Company's legal claims processing service, the Company holds cash for various settlement funds once the fund is in the wind down stage and claims have been paid. The cash is used to pay tax obligations and other liabilities of the settlement funds. The Company has recorded an offsetting liability for the settlement funds received, which is included in Obligation for claim payment in the consolidated balance sheets of $56.0 million and $42.5 million at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively. Of the total amount of settlement funds received, $10.6 million and $22.9 million were not subject to legal restrictions on use as of December 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

Accounts Receivable and Allowance for Doubtful Accounts

Accounts receivable are carried at the original invoice amount less an estimate made for doubtful accounts. Revenue that has been earned but remains unbilled at the end of the period is recorded as a component of accounts receivable, net. The Company specifically analyzes accounts receivable and historical bad debts, customer credit-worthiness, current economic trends, and changes in customer payment terms and collection trends when evaluating the adequacy of its allowance for doubtful accounts. The Company writes off accounts receivable balances against the allowance for doubtful accounts, net of any amounts recorded in deferred revenue, when it becomes probable that the receivable will not be collected.

Inventories

Inventories are valued at the lower of cost and net realizable value method and include the cost of raw materials, labor, and purchased subassemblies. Cost is determined using the weighted average method. Net Inventory as of December 31, 2018 and 2017 were $16.2 million and $11.9 million, respectively.

Property, Plant and Equipment

Property, plant, and equipment are recorded at cost less accumulated depreciation. Depreciation is computed using the straight-line method (which approximates the use of the assets) over the estimated useful lives of the assets. When these assets are sold or otherwise disposed of, the asset and related depreciation is relieved, and any gain or loss is included in the consolidated statements of operations for the period of sale or disposal. Leasehold improvements are amortized over the lease term or the useful life of the asset, whichever is shorter. Assets under capital leases are amortized over the lease term unless ownership is transferred by the end of the lease or there is a bargain purchase option, in which case assets are amortized normally on a straight-line basis over the useful life that would be assigned if the assets were owned. The amortization of these capital lease assets is recorded in depreciation expense in the consolidated statements of operations. Repair and maintenance costs are expensed as incurred.

Intangible Assets

Customer Relationships

Customer relationship intangible assets represent customer contracts and relationships obtained as part of acquired businesses. Customer relationship values are estimated by evaluating various factors including historical attrition rates, contractual provisions and customer growth rates, among others. The estimated average useful lives of customer relationships range from 4 to 16 years depending on facts and circumstances. These intangible assets are primarily amortized based on undiscounted cash flows. The Company evaluates the remaining useful life of intangible assets on an annual basis to determine whether events and circumstances warrant a revision to the remaining useful life.

Trade Names

The Company has determined that its trade name intangible assets are indefinite-lived assets and therefore are not subject to amortization. The Company performed a quantitative analysis as part of the annual impairment test on October 1, 2018 and October 1, 2017, and recorded an impairment charge. Additionally, late in the fourth quarter of 2017, the Company implemented a strategy to transition to a unified Exela brand beginning in 2018. As a result, the Company performed a quantitative analysis as of December 31, 2017, and recorded another impairment charge. The Company’s valuation of trade names at the reporting unit level utilizes the Relief-from-Royalty method that represents the present value of the future economic benefits generated by ownership of the trade names and approximates the amount that the Company would have to pay as a royalty to a third party to license such names.

Trademarks

The Company has determined that its trademark intangible assets resulting from acquisitions are definite-lived assets and therefore are subject to amortization. The Company has historically amortized trademarks on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful life, which is typically 1 year. As part of the impairment analysis completed as of December 31, 2017, and due to the Company's strategy to transition to a unified Exela brand beginning in 2018, the Company reduced the estimated useful lives of its trademarks and amortized the trademarks over a one year period.

Developed Technology

The Company has various developed technologies embedded in its technology platform. Developed technology is an integral asset to the Company in providing solutions to customers and is recorded as an intangible asset. The Company amortizes developed technology on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful life, which is typically 5 to 8.5 years.

Capitalized Software Costs

The Company capitalizes certain costs incurred to develop software products to be sold, leased or otherwise marketed after establishing technological feasibility in accordance with ASC section 985-20, Software—Costs of Software to Be Sold, Leased, or Marketed, and the Company capitalizes costs to develop or purchase internal-use software in accordance with ASC section 350-40, Intangibles—Goodwill and Other— Internal-Use Software. Significant estimates and assumptions include determining the appropriate period over which to amortize the capitalized costs based on estimated useful lives and estimating the marketability of the commercial software products and related future revenues. The Company amortizes capitalized software costs on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful life, which is typically 3 to 5 years.

Outsourced Contract Costs

Costs of outsourcing contracts, including costs incurred for bid and proposal activities, are generally expensed as incurred. However, certain costs incurred upon initiation of an outsourcing contract are deferred and expensed on a straight-line basis over the estimated contract term. These costs represent incremental external costs or certain specific internal costs that are directly related to the contract acquisition or transition activities and can be separated into two principal categories: contract commissions and transition/set-up costs. Examples of such capitalized costs include hourly labor and related fringe benefits and travel costs.

Non-compete Agreements

The Company acquired certain non-compete agreements in connection with the Novitex Business Combination. These were related to four Novitex executives that were terminated following the acquisition. As of December 31, 2018 these agreements were fully amortized.

Assembled Workforce

The Company acquired assembled workforce in an assets purchase transaction in the fourth quarter of 2018. The Company recognized an intangible asset for the acquired assembled workforce and shall amortize the asset on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful life of 4 years.

Impairment of Indefinite-Lived Assets

The Company conducts its annual indefinite-lived assets impairment tests on October 1st of each year for its indefinite-lived trade names, or more frequently if indicators of impairment exist. When performing the impairment test, the Company has the option of performing a qualitative or quantitative assessment to determine if an impairment has occurred. A quantitative assessment requires comparison of fair value of the asset to its carrying value. The Company utilizes the Income Approach, specifically the Relief-from-Royalty method, which has the basic tenet that a user of that intangible asset would have to make a stream of payments to the owner of the asset in return for the rights to use that asset. Refer to Note 7- Intangible Assets and Goodwill for additional discussion of impairment of trade names.

Impairment of Long-Lived Assets

The Company reviews the recoverability of its long-lived assets, including finite-lived trade names, trademarks, customer relationships, developed technology, capitalized software costs, outsourced contract costs, acquired software, workforce, and property, plant and equipment, when events or changes in circumstances occur that indicate that the carrying value of the asset may not be recoverable. The assessment of possible impairment is based on the ability to recover the carrying value of the asset from the expected future pre-tax cash flows (undiscounted and without interest charges) of the related operations. If these cash flows are less than the carrying value of such asset, an impairment loss is recognized for the difference between estimated fair value and carrying value. The primary measure of fair value is based on discounted cash flows based in part on the financial results and the expectation of future performance.

The Company did not record any material impairment related to its property, plant, and equipment, customer relationships, trademarks, developed technology, capitalized software, or outsourced contract costs for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016.

Goodwill

Goodwill represents the excess purchase price over tangible and intangible assets acquired less liabilities assumed arising from business combinations. Goodwill is generally allocated to reporting units based upon relative fair value (taking into consideration other factors such as synergies) when an acquired business is integrated into multiple reporting units. The Company's reporting units are at the operating segment level, which discrete financial information is prepared and regularly reviewed by management. When a business within a reporting unit is disposed of, goodwill is allocated to the disposed business using the relative fair value method.

The Company conducts its annual goodwill impairment tests on October 1st of each year, or more frequently if indicators of impairment exist. When performing the annual impairment test, the Company has the option of performing a qualitative or quantitative assessment to determine if an impairment has occurred. If a qualitative assessment indicates that it is more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying amount, the Company would be required to perform a quantitative impairment analysis for goodwill. The quantitative analysis requires a comparison of fair value of the reporting unit to its carrying value, including goodwill. If the carrying value of the reporting unit exceeds its fair value, an impairment loss is recognized in an amount equal to that excess, limited to the total amount of goodwill allocated to that reporting unit. The Company uses a combination of the Guideline Public Company Method of the Market Approach and the Discounted Cash Flow Method of the Income Approach to determine the reporting unit fair value. *Refer to Note 7- Intangible Assets and Goodwill* for additional discussion of impairment of goodwill.

Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities

As required by ASC 815—Derivatives and Hedging, the Company records all derivatives on the balance sheet at fair value. The accounting for changes in the fair value of derivatives depends on the intended use of the derivative, whether the Company has elected to designate a derivative in a hedging relationship and apply hedge accounting and whether the hedging relationship has satisfied the criteria necessary to apply hedge accounting. Hedge accounting generally provides for the matching of the timing of gain or loss recognition on the hedging instrument with the recognition of the changes in the fair value of the hedged asset or liability that are attributable to the hedged risk in a fair value hedge or the earnings effect of the hedged forecasted transactions in a cash flow hedge. The Company may enter into derivative contracts that are intended to economically hedge certain of its risk, even though hedge accounting does not apply or the Company elects not to apply hedge accounting.

The Company's objective in using interest rate derivatives is to manage its exposure to variable interest rates related to its term loan under the Credit Agreement. In order to accomplish this objective, in November 2017, the Company entered into a three year, one-month LIBOR interest rate contract with a notional amount of $347.8 million. The contract will mitigate the variable interest rate risk related to the LIBOR with a fixed interest rate paid semi-annually starting January 12, 2018.

The following table summarizes the Company's interest rate swap positions as of December 31, 2018:

		December 31, 2018	
Effective date	Maturity date	(In Millions) Notional Amount	Weighted Average Interest Rate
1/12/2018	1/12/2021	$ 339.1	1.9725 %

The interest rate swap, which is used to manage the Company's exposure to interest rate movements and other identified risks, was not designated as a hedge. As such, the change in the fair value of the derivative is recorded directly in earnings and was a gain of $2.5 million and $1.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

Benefit Plan Accruals

The Company has defined benefit plans in the U.K and Germany, under which participants earn a retirement benefit based upon a formula set forth in the plan. The Company records expense related to this plan using actuarially determined amounts that are calculated under the provisions of ASC 715, Compensation-Retirement Benefits. Key assumptions used in the actuarial valuations include the discount rate, the expected rate of return on plan assets and the rate of increase in future compensation levels. Refer to Note 11- Employee Benefit Plans.

Leases

Leases are classified as capital leases whenever the terms of the lease transfer substantially all of the risks and rewards of ownership to the lessee. All other leases are classified as operating leases. Assets held under a capital lease are initially recognized as assets of the Company at their fair value at the inception of the lease, or if lower, at the present value of the minimum lease payments. The corresponding liability to the lessor is included in the other long-term obligations in the consolidated balance sheets. Operating lease payments are initially recognized as an expense on a straight-line basis over the lease term, except where another systematic basis is more representative of the time pattern in which the economic benefits from the leased asset are consumed.

Stock-Based Compensation

The Company accounts for stock based compensation in accordance with ASC 718, Compensation- Stock Compensation. ASC 718 requires generally that all equity awards be accounted for at their "fair value." This fair value is measured at the fair value of value of the awards at the grant date and recognized as compensation expense on a straight-line basis over the vesting period. The fair value of the awards on the grant date is determined using the Enterprise Value

model. The expense resulting from share-based payments is recorded in general and administrative expense in the accompanying consolidated statements of operations. *Refer to Note 14 - Stock-Based Compensation.*

Revenue Recognition

We account for revenue in accordance with ASC 606. A performance obligation is a promise in a contract to transfer a distinct good or service to the customer, and is the unit of account in ASC 606. Revenue is measured as the amount of consideration we expect to receive in exchange for transferring goods or providing services. The contract transaction price is allocated to each distinct performance obligation and recognized as revenue when, or as, the performance obligation is satisfied. All of our material sources of revenue are derived from contracts with customers, primarily relating to the provision of business and transaction processing services within each of our segments. We do not have any significant extended payment terms, as payment is received shortly after goods are delivered or services are provided.

Nature of Services

Our primary performance obligations are to stand ready to provide various forms of business processing services, consisting of a series of distinct services that are substantially the same and have the same pattern of transfer over time, and accordingly are combined into a single performance obligation. Our promise to our customers is typically to perform an unknown or unspecified quantity of tasks and the consideration received is contingent upon the customers' use (i.e., number of transactions processed, requests fulfilled, etc.); as such, the total transaction price is variable. We allocate the variable fees to the single performance obligation charged to the distinct service period in which we have the contractual right to bill under the contract.

Disaggregation of Revenues

The following tables disaggregate revenue from contracts by geographic region and by segment for the year ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016:

	Year Ended December 31,								
	2018			2017			2016		
	ITPS	HS	LLPS	ITPS	HS	LLPS	ITPS	HS	LLPS
United States	$ 1,034,941	$ 228,015	$ 84,560	$ 675,613	$ 233,595	$ 91,619	$ 304,563	$ 247,796	$ 102,206
Europe	211,314	—	—	136,531	—	—	131,287	—	—
Other	27,392	—	—	14,966	—	—	4,074	—	—
Total	$ 1,273,647	$ 228,015	$ 84,560	$ 827,110	$ 233,595	$ 91,619	$ 439,924	$ 247,796	$ 102,206

Contract Balances

The following table presents contract assets and contract liabilities recognized at December 31, 2018 and 2017:

	December 31, 2018	December 31, 2017
Accounts receivable, net	$ 270,812	$ 229,704
Deferred revenues	16,940	13,717
Costs to obtain and fulfill a contract	18,624	22,929
Customer deposits	34,235	31,656

Accounts receivable, net includes $39.5 million and $28.4 million as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively, representing amounts not billed to customers. We have accrued the unbilled receivables for work performed in accordance with the terms of contracts with customers.

Deferred revenues relate to payments received in advance of performance under a contract. A significant portion of this balance relates to maintenance contracts or other service contracts where we received payments for upfront conversions or implementation activities which do not transfer a service to the customer but rather are used in fulfilling the related performance obligations that transfer over time. The advance consideration received from customers is deferred over the contract term. We recognized revenue of $13.4 million during the year ended December 31, 2018 that had been deferred as of December 31, 2017.

Costs incurred to obtain and fulfill contracts are deferred and expensed on a straight-line basis over the estimated benefit period. We recognized $10.5 million of amortization for these costs in 2018 within depreciation and amortization expense. These costs represent incremental external costs or certain specific internal costs that are directly related to the contract acquisition or transition activities and can be separated into two principal categories: contract commissions and transition/set-up costs. Examples of such capitalized costs include hourly labor and related fringe benefits and travel costs. Applying the practical expedient in ASC 340-40-25-4, we recognize the incremental costs of obtaining contracts as an expense when incurred if the amortization period would have been one year or less. These costs are included in Selling, general and administrative expenses. The effect of applying this practical expedient was not material.

Customer deposits consist primarily of amounts received from customers in advance for postage. The majority of the amounts recorded as of December 31, 2017 were used to pay for postage with the corresponding postage revenue being recognized during the year ended December 31, 2018.

Performance Obligations

At the inception of each contract, we assess the goods and services promised in our contracts and identify each distinct performance obligation. The majority of our contracts have a single performance obligation, as the promise to transfer the individual goods or services is not separately identifiable from other promises in the contracts. For the majority of our business and transaction processing service contracts, revenues are recognized as services are provided based on an appropriate input or output method, typically based on the related labor or transactional volumes.

Certain of our contracts have multiple performance obligations, including contracts that combine software implementation services with post-implementation customer support. For contracts with multiple performance obligations, we allocate the contract's transaction price to each performance obligation using our best estimate of the standalone selling price of each distinct good or service in the contract. The primary method used to estimate standalone selling price is the expected cost plus a margin approach, under which we estimate our expected costs of satisfying a performance obligation and add an appropriate margin for that distinct good or service. We also use the adjusted market approach whereby we estimate the price that customers in the market would be willing to pay. In assessing whether to allocate variable consideration to a specific part of the contract, we consider the nature of the variable payment and whether it relates specifically to its efforts to satisfy a specific part of the contract. Certain of our software implementation performance obligations are satisfied at a point in time, typically when customer acceptance is obtained.

When evaluating the transaction price, we analyze, on a contract-by-contract basis, all applicable variable consideration. The nature of our contracts give rise to variable consideration, including volume discounts, contract penalties, and other similar items that generally decrease the transaction price. We estimate these amounts based on the expected amount to be provided to customers and reduce revenues recognized. We do not anticipate significant changes to our estimates of variable consideration.

We include reimbursements from customers, such as postage costs, in revenue, while the related costs are included in cost of revenue.

Transaction Price Allocated to the Remaining Performance Obligations

In accordance with optional exemptions available under ASC 606, we did not disclose the value of unsatisfied performance obligations for (1) contracts with an original expected length of one year or less, and (2) contracts for which variable consideration relates entirely to an unsatisfied performance obligation, which comprise the majority of our contracts. We have certain non-cancellable contracts where we receive a fixed monthly fee in exchange for a series of

distinct services that are substantially the same and have the same pattern of transfer over time, with the corresponding remaining performance obligations as of December 31, 2018 in each of the future periods below:

	Estimated Remaining Fixed Consideration for Unsatisfied Performance Obligations
2019	$ 40,402
2020	23,310
2021	13,416
2022	4,780
2023	1,113
2024 and thereafter	771
Total	$ 83,792

Research and Development

Research and development costs are expensed as incurred. Research and development costs expensed for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016 were $2.0 million, $2.3 million, and $2.3 million, respectively.

Advertising

Advertising costs are expensed as incurred. Advertising expense for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016, were $0.9 million, $0.7 million, and $1.1 million, respectively.

Income Taxes

The Company accounts for income taxes by using the asset and liability method. The Company accounts for income taxes regarding uncertain tax positions and recognized interest and penalties related to uncertain tax positions in income tax benefit/ (expense) in the consolidated statements of operations.

Deferred income taxes are recognized on the tax consequences of temporary differences by applying enacted statutory tax rates applicable in future years to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts and the tax bases of existing assets and liabilities, as determined under tax laws and rates. A valuation allowance is provided when it is more likely than not that all or some portion of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. Due to numerous ownership changes, the Company is subject to limitations on existing net operating losses under Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code (the Code). Accordingly, valuation allowances have been established against a portion of the net operating losses to reflect estimated Section 382 limitations. The Company also considered the realizability of net operating losses not limited by Section 382. The Company did not consider future book income as a source of taxable income when assessing if a portion of the deferred tax assets are more likely than not to be realized. However, scheduling the reversal of existing deferred tax liabilities indicated that only a portion of the deferred tax assets are likely to be realized. Therefore, partial valuation allowances were established against a portion of the Company's deferred tax assets. In the event the Company determines that it would be able to realize deferred tax assets that have valuation allowances established, an adjustment to the net deferred tax assets would be recognized as component of income tax expense through continuing operations.

The Company engages in transactions (i.e. acquisitions) in which the tax consequences may be subject to uncertainty and examination by the varying taxing authorities. Significant judgment is required by the Company in assessing and estimating the tax consequences of these transactions. While the Company's tax returns are prepared and based on the Company's interpretation of tax laws and regulations, in the normal course of business the tax returns are subject to examination by the various taxing authorities. Such examinations may result in future assessments of additional tax, interest and penalties. For purposes of the Company's income tax provision, a tax benefit is not recognized if the tax position is not more likely than not to be sustained based solely on its technical merits. Considerable judgment is involved in determining which tax positions are more likely than not to be sustained. *Refer to Note 10 - Income Taxes* for further information.

Loss Contingencies

The Company reviews the status of each significant matter, if any, and assess its potential financial exposure considering all available information including, but not limited to, the impact of negotiations, settlements, rulings, advice of legal counsel and other updated information and events pertaining to a particular matter. If the potential loss from any claim or legal proceeding is considered probable and the amount can be reasonably estimated, the Company accrues a liability for the estimated loss. Significant judgment is required in both the determination of probability and the determination as to whether an exposure is reasonably estimable. Because of uncertainties related to loss contingencies, accruals are based only on the best information available at the time. As additional information becomes available, the Company reassesses the potential liability related to its pending claims and litigation, and may revise its estimates. These revisions in the estimates of the potential liabilities could have a material impact on the results of operations and financial position. The Company's liabilities exclude any estimates for legal costs not yet incurred associated with handling these matters.

Operations

A portion of the Company's labor and operations is situated outside of the United States in India and other locations. The carrying value of long-lived assets that are situated outside of the United States is approximately $34.4 million and $26.2 million as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively

Foreign Currency Translation

The functional currency for the Company's production operations located in India, Philippines, China, and Mexico is the United States dollar. Included in other expense as "Sundry expense (income), net" in the consolidated statements of operations are net exchange gains of $1.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 and losses of $1.4 million, and $0.2 million for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

The Company has determined all other international subsidiaries' functional currency is the local currency. These assets and liabilities are translated at exchange rates in effect at the balance sheet date while income and expense amounts are translated at average exchange rates during the period. The resulting foreign currency translation adjustments are disclosed as a separate component of other comprehensive loss.

Beneficial Conversion Feature

The Company's Series A Perpetual Convertible Preferred Stock, par value $0.0001 per share (the "Series A Preferred Stock") contains a beneficial conversion feature, which arises when a debt or equity security is issued with an embedded conversion option that is beneficial to the investor or in the money at inception because the conversion option has an effective strike price that is less than the market price of the underlying stock at the commitment date. The Company recognized the beneficial conversion feature by allocating the intrinsic value of the conversion option, which is the number of shares of Common Stock available upon conversion multiplied by the difference between the effective conversion price per share and the fair value of Common Stock per share on the commitment date, to additional paid-in capital, resulting in a discount on the Series A Preferred Stock. As a result of the occurrence of events meeting the definition of a "Fundamental Change" as defined in the Certificate of Designations, Preferences, Rights and Limitations of Series A Perpetual Convertible Preferred Stock of the Company during the period, the Company recognized the entire dividend equivalent of $16.4 million as of December 31, 2017. There was no dividend equivalent recognized in 2018.

Net Loss per Share

Earnings per share ("EPS") is computed by dividing net loss available to holders of the Company's Common Stock by the weighted average number of shares of Common Stock outstanding during the period, excluding the effects of any potentially dilutive securities. Diluted EPS gives effect to the potential dilution that could occur if securities or other contracts to issue Common Stock were exercised or converted into Common Stock, using the more dilutive of the two-class method or if-converted method in periods of earnings. The two class method is an earnings allocation method that determines earnings per share for Common Stock and participating securities. As the Company experienced net

losses for the periods presented, the impact of participating Series A Preferred Stock was calculated based on the if-converted method. Diluted EPS excludes all dilutive potential of shares of Common Stock if their effect is anti-dilutive.

For the year ended December 31, 2018 shares of the Company's Series A Convertible Preferred Stock ("Series A Preferred Stock"), if converted would have resulted in an additional 5,586,344 shares of common stock outstanding, but were not included in the computation of diluted loss per share as their effects were anti-dilutive.

The Company has not included the effect of 35,000,000 warrants sold in the Quinpario Initial Public Offering ("IPO") in the calculation of net income (loss) per share. Warrants are considered anti-dilutive and excluded when the exercise price exceeds the average market value of the Company's Common Stock price during the applicable period.

The components of basic and diluted EPS are as follows:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
Net loss attributable to common stockholders (A)	$ (166,172)	$ (223,149)	$ (48,103)
Weighted average common shares outstanding - basic and diluted (B)	152,343,823	107,068,262	64,024,557
Loss Per Share:			
Basic and diluted (A/B)	$ (1.09)	$ (2.08)	$ (0.75)

Business Combinations

The Company includes the results of operations of the businesses acquired as of the respective dates of acquisition. The Company allocates the fair value of the purchase price of acquisitions to the assets acquired and liabilities assumed based on their estimated fair values. The excess of the fair value of the purchase price over the fair values of these identifiable assets and liabilities is recorded as goodwill.

Fair Value Measurements

The Company records the fair value of assets and liabilities in accordance with ASC 820, *Fair Value Measurement* ("ASC 820"). ASC 820 defines fair value as the price received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date and in the principal or most advantageous market for that asset or liability. The fair value should be calculated based on assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability, not on assumptions specific to the entity.

In addition to defining fair value, ASC 820 expands the disclosure requirements around fair value and establishes a fair value hierarchy for valuation inputs. The hierarchy prioritizes the inputs into three levels based on the extent to which inputs used in measuring fair value are observable in the market. Each fair value measurement is reported in one of the three levels, which is determined by the lowest level input that is significant to the fair value measurement in its entirety. These levels are:

Level 1 — quoted prices (unadjusted) in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.

Level 2 — quoted prices for similar assets and liabilities in active markets or inputs that are observable for the asset or liability, either directly or indirectly through market corroboration, for substantially the full term of the financial instrument.

Level 3 — unobservable inputs reflecting Management's own assumptions about the inputs used in pricing the asset or liability at fair value.

Refer to Note 13 — Fair Value Measurement for further discussion.

Concentration of Credit Risk

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to concentration of credit risk consist primarily of cash and cash equivalents and trade receivables. The Company maintains its cash and cash equivalents and certain other financial instruments with highly rated financial institutions and limits the amount of credit exposure with any one financial institution. From time to time, the Company assesses the credit worthiness of its customers. Credit risk on trade receivables is minimized because of the large number of entities comprising the Company's client base and their dispersion across many industries and geographic areas. The Company generally has not experienced any material losses related to receivables from any individual customer or groups of customers. The Company does not require collateral. Due to these factors, no additional credit risk beyond amounts provided for collection losses is believed by management to be probable in the Company's accounts receivable, net. The Company does not have any significant customers that account for 10% or more of the total consolidated revenues

Recently Adopted Accounting Pronouncements

Effective January 1, 2018, the Company adopted Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") no. 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (ASC 606)*. Under ASU 2014-09, revenue is recognized based on a five-step model. The core principle of the model is that revenue will be recognized when the transfer of promised goods or services to customers is made in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services. The Company adopted this standard using the modified retrospective approach applied to those contracts that were not completed as of January 1, 2018. The results for the reporting period beginning after January 1, 2018 are presented in accordance with the new standard, although historical information has not been restated and continues to be reported under the accounting standards and policies in effect for those periods. The adoption of ASC 606 did not have a material impact on the Company's financial position, results of operations and cash flows as of or for the period ended December 31, 2018, and we expect the impact of the adoption of the new standard will be immaterial to our results of operations on an ongoing basis. The cumulative effect of accounting change recognized was $1.4 million recorded as an increase to beginning balance of accumulated deficit, and a corresponding reduction to Accounts Receivable, net. See Note 3 for additional disclosure.

Effective January 1, 2018, the Company adopted ASU no. 2016-15, *(Topic 230): Statement of Cash Flows: Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments,* which adds or clarifies guidance on the presentation and classification of eight specific types of cash receipts and cash payments in the statement of cash flows such as debt prepayment or extinguishment costs, settlement of contingent consideration arising from a business combination, insurance settlement proceeds, and distributions from certain equity method investees, with the intent of reducing diversity in practice. We applied the guidance retrospectively to all periods presented. Exela reclassified a loss on extinguishment of debt from operating activities to financing activities in the third quarter of 2017 in the currently presented financial statements ended December 31, 2018. The adoption had no impact on the Company's financial position, results of operations, and net cash flows for the period ended December 31, 2018.

Effective January 1, 2018, the Company adopted ASU no. 2016-18, *(Topic 230): Restricted Cash. Statement of Cash Flows: Restricted Cash*. The ASU addresses diversity in practice that exists in the classification and presentation of changes in restricted cash and requires that a statement of cash flows explain the change during the period in the total of cash, cash equivalents, and amounts generally described as restricted cash or restricted cash equivalents. We applied the guidance retrospectively to all periods presented. As a result of adopting the ASU no. 2016-18, restricted cash is included in the balances of restricted cash, cash and cash equivalents presented in the Statement of Cash Flows for the year ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016. Adopting the standard increased the net change in cash and cash equivalents, which is reflected within operating cash flows, by $16.6 million and $3.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 and 2016. Total Cash and cash equivalents for the Beginning of period and End of period December 31, 2017 increased $25.9 million and $42.5 million due to the inclusion of restricted cash. Total Cash and cash equivalents for the Beginning of period and End of period December 31, 2016 increased $22.4 million and $25.9 million due to the inclusion of restricted cash.

Effective October 1, 2017 the Company adopted ASU 2017-04, *(Topic 350) Intangibles Goodwill and Other – Simplifying the Test for Goodwill Impairment*. Previous guidance required an entity that has not elected the private company alternative for goodwill to perform a two-step test to determine the amount, if any, of goodwill impairment. In

Step 1, an entity compares the fair value of a reporting unit with its carrying amount, including goodwill. If the carrying amount of the reporting unit exceeds its fair value, the entity performs Step 2 and compares the implied fair value of goodwill with the carrying amount of that goodwill for that reporting unit. An impairment charge equal to the amount by which the carrying amount of goodwill for the reporting unit exceeds the implied fair value of that goodwill is recorded, limited to the amount of goodwill allocated to that reporting unit. To address concerns over the cost and complexity of the two-step goodwill impairment test, the amendments in this Update remove the second step of the test. An entity will apply a one-step quantitative test and record the amount of goodwill impairment as the excess of a reporting unit's carrying amount over its fair value, not to exceed the total amount of goodwill allocated to the reporting unit. The new guidance does not amend the optional qualitative assessment of goodwill impairment.

Effective January 1, 2018, the Company adopted ASU no. 2017-07, *(Topic 715): Compensation Retirement Benefit; Improving the Presentation of Net Periodic Pension Cost and Net Periodic Postretirement Benefit Cost*. The amendments to this ASU require the service cost component of net periodic benefit cost be reported in the same income statement line or lines as other compensation costs for employees. The other components of net periodic benefit cost are required to be reported separately from service costs and outside a subtotal of income from operations. The new standard requires retrospective application and allows a practical expedient that permits an employer to use the amounts disclosed in its pension plan footnote for the prior comparative periods as the estimation basis for applying the retrospective presentation. Adoption of the standard resulted in only the service cost being recorded to Cost of revenue.

Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU no. 2016-02, *Leases (842)* This ASU increases transparency and comparability among organizations by recognizing lease assets and lease liabilities on the balance sheet and disclosing key information about leasing arrangements. Since the issuance of the original standard, the FASB has issued a subsequent update that provides a practical expedient for land easements (ASU 2018-01). The amendments in this ASU are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018 and interim periods within those fiscal years and early application is permitted. The standard becomes effective for the Company January 1, 2019. The Company will use a modified retrospective adoption approach in the period of adoption with the effective date as its date of initial application on January 1, 2019, in its first reporting on adoption. We have elected the following practical expedients permitted under the transition guidance within the new standard.

- Not to record leases with an initial term of 12 months on the balance sheet;
- Not to reassess the (1) definition of a lease, (2) lease classification, and (3) initial direct costs for existing leases during transition.

Upon adoption, the Company expects to record a material amount of right-of-use assets before deferred taxes, representing the present value of future lease payments under leases with terms of greater than twelve months. The Company also expects to record corresponding liabilities for the same amount. The Company does not expect to make any material cumulative adjustment to the opening balance of equity.

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASU no. 2016-13, *Financial Instruments – Credit Losses (Topic 326): Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments*, to replace the incurred loss impairment methodology under current U.S. GAAP with a methodology that reflects expected credit losses and requires consideration of a broader range of reasonable and supportable information to inform credit loss estimates. The Company will be required to use a forward-looking expected credit loss model for accounts receivables, loans, and other financial instruments. Credit losses relating to available-for-sale debt securities will also be recorded through an allowance for credit losses rather than as a reduction in the amortized cost basis of the securities. The standard will be effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, and interim periods within those fiscal years. Adoption of the standard will be applied using a modified retrospective approach through a cumulative-effect adjustment to retained earnings as of the effective date. The Company is currently in the early stages of evaluating the impact that adopting this standard will have on the consolidated financial statements.

In July 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-11, Earnings Per Share (Topic 260), Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity (Topic 480) and Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815): I. Accounting for Certain Financial Instruments with Down Round Features; II. Replacement of the Indefinite Deferral for Mandatorily Redeemable Financial Instruments of Certain Nonpublic Entities and Certain Mandatorily Redeemable Noncontrolling Interests with a Scope Exception. Part I of this ASU addresses the complexity of accounting for certain financial instruments with down round features. Down round features are features of certain equity-linked instruments (or embedded features) that result in the strike price being reduced on the basis of the pricing of future equity offerings. Current accounting guidance creates cost and complexity for entities that issue financial instruments (such as warrants and convertible instruments) with down round features that require fair value measurement of the entire instrument or conversion option. Part II of this ASU addresses the difficulty of navigating Topic 480, Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity, because of the existence of extensive pending content in the FASB Accounting Standards Codification. This pending content is the result of the indefinite deferral of accounting requirements about mandatorily redeemable financial instruments of certain nonpublic entities and certain mandatorily redeemable noncontrolling interests. The amendments in Part II of this update do not have an accounting effect. This ASU is effective for fiscal years, and interim periods within those years, beginning after December 15, 2018. The company is adopting this standard in the first quarter of fiscal 2019 and is currently evaluating the impact that adopting this standard will have on the consolidated financial statements.

In August 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-12*, Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815);* Targeted Improvements to Accounting for Hedging Activities. The amendments in this ASU better align the risk management activities and financial reporting for these hedging relationships through changes to both the designation and measurement guidance for qualifying hedging relationships and presentation of hedge results. The guidance is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018, and interim periods within those fiscal years. The company is adopting this standard in the first quarter of fiscal 2019 and is currently evaluating the impact that adopting this standard will have on the consolidated financial statements.

In February 2018, the FASB issued ASU 2018-02, *Income Statement—Reporting Comprehensive Income (Topic 220): Reclassification of Certain Tax Effects from Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income*. The amendments in this ASU address a narrow-scope financial reporting issue related to the tax effects that may become "stranded" in accumulated other comprehensive income (AOCI) as a result of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (TCJA). An entity may elect to reclassify the income tax effects of the TCJA on items within AOCI to retained earnings. The guidance is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018, and interim periods within those fiscal years. The company is adopting this standard in the first quarter of fiscal 2019 and is currently evaluating the impact that adopting this standard will have on the consolidated financial statements.

In June 2018, the FASB issued ASU 2018-07, *Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718):* Improvements to Nonemployee Share-Based Payment Accounting to amend the accounting for share-based payment awards issued to nonemployees. Under the revised guidance, the accounting for awards issued to nonemployees will be similar to the model for employee awards, except that: the ASU allows an entity to elect on an award-by-award basis to use the contractual term as the expected term assumption in the option pricing model, and the cost of the grant is recognized in the same period(s) and in the same manner as if the grantor had paid cash. The guidance is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018, and interim periods within those fiscal years. The company is adopting this standard in the first quarter of fiscal 2019 and is currently evaluating the impact that adopting this standard will have on the consolidated financial statements.

In August 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-15, *Intangibles, Goodwill, and Other - Internal Use Software (Subtopic 350-40): Customer's accounting for implementation costs incurred in a Cloud Computing Arrangement that is a service contract*. The amendments in this update align the requirements for capitalizing implementation costs incurred in a hosting arrangement that is a service contract with the requirements for capitalizing implementation costs incurred to develop or obtain internal-use software (and hosting arrangements that include an internal-use software license). Accordingly, the amendments require an entity (customer) in a hosting arrangement that is a service contract to follow the guidance in Subtopic 350-40 to determine which implementation costs to capitalize as an asset related to the service contract and which costs to expense. The amendments also require the entity (customer) to expense the capitalized implementation costs of a hosting arrangement that is a service contract over the term of the hosting arrangement, which includes reasonably certain renewals. The guidance is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, and

interim periods within those fiscal years. The company is currently in the early stages of evaluating the impact that adopting this standard will have on the consolidated financial statements.

3. Business Combinations

Novitex

On July 12, 2017, the Company consummated its business combination with SourceHOV and Novitex pursuant to the Business Combination Agreement and Consent, Waiver and Amendment to the Business Combination Agreement, dated February 21, 2017 and June 15, 2017, respectively. In connection with the Novitex Business Combination, the Company acquired debt facilities and issued notes totaling $1.4 billion *(refer to Note 9 – Long Term Debt and Credit Facilities)*. Proceeds from the acquired debt were used to refinance the existing debt of SourceHOV, settle the outstanding debt of Novitex, and pay fees and expenses incurred in connection with the Novitex Business Combination. Immediately following the Novitex Business Combination, there were 146,910,648 shares of Common Stock, 9,194,233 shares of Series A Preferred Stock, and 35,000,000 warrants outstanding. *Refer to Note 15 – Stockholders' Equity*.

Under ASC 805, *Business Combinations*, SourceHOV was deemed the accounting acquirer based on the following predominate factors: its former owners have the largest portion of voting rights in the Company, the board and Management has more individuals coming from SourceHOV than either Quinpario or Novitex, SourceHOV was the largest entity by revenue and by assets, and the headquarters was moved to the SourceHOV headquarters location.

The Company acquired 100% of the equity of Novitex pursuant to the Novitex Business Combination Agreement by issuing 30,600,000 shares of Common Stock of Exela to Novitex Parent, L.P., the sole stockholder of Novitex. Total value of equity for the transaction was $244.8 million. Additionally, as noted, the Company used proceeds from acquired debt to settle the outstanding debt of Novitex in the amount of $420.5 million, and pay transaction related costs and interest on behalf of Novitex in the amount of $10.3 million and $1.0 million, respectively, which was accounted for as part of consideration.

The acquired assets and assumed liabilities of Novitex were recorded at their estimated fair values. The purchase price allocation for the Novitex business combination is preliminary and subject to change within the respective measurement period which will not extend beyond one year from the acquisition date. Measurement period adjustments will be recognized in the reporting period in which the adjustment amounts are determined.

The following table summarizes the consideration paid for Novitex and the fair value of the assets acquired and liabilities assumed at the acquisition date on July 12, 2017. Certain estimated values for the acquisition, including goodwill, intangible assets, property, plant and equipment, and deferred income taxes, are not yet finalized and are subject to revision as additional information becomes available and more detailed analyses are completed. The purchase price was allocated based on information available at acquisition date. During the fourth quarter of 2017, the Company recorded measurement period adjustments which increased goodwill by $0.9 million, primarily related to updated information related to income taxes.

Assets acquired:	
Cash and equivalents	$ 8,428
Accounts receivable	87,474
Inventory	1,245
Prepaid expenses & other	13,974
Property, plant and equipment, net	60,657
Identifiable intangible assets, net	251,060
Deferred charges and other assets	2,723
Other noncurrent assets.	93
Goodwill	406,060
Total identifiable assets acquired	$ 831,714
Liabilities assumed:	
Accounts payable	(29,444)
Short-term borrowings and current portion of long-term debt.	(11,335)
Accrued liabilities	(30,432)
Advanced billings and customer deposits	(18,926)
Long term debt	(15,704)
Deferred taxes	(46,991)
Other liabilities	(2,226)
Total liabilities assumed	$ (155,058)
Total consideration	$ 676,656

The identifiable intangible assets include customer relationships, non-compete agreements, internally developed software, and a trademark. Customer relationships and non-compete agreements were valued using the Income Approach, specifically the Multi-Period Excess Earnings method. The trademark was valued using the Income Approach, specifically the Relief-from-Royalty method. Internally developed software was valued based on costs incurred related to Connect Platform. All of these intangibles acquired represent a Level 3 measurement as they are based on unobservable inputs reflecting the Company's management's own assumptions about the inputs used in pricing the asset or liability at fair value.

	Weighted Average Useful Life (in years)	Fair value
Trademark - Novitex	9.5	$ 18,000
Customer relationships	16.0	230,000
Internally developed software - Connect Platform	5.0	1,710
Non-compete agreements	1.0	1,350
		$ 251,060

As of the date of the Novitex Business Combination, the weighted-average useful life of total identifiable intangible assets acquired in the Novitex Business Combination, excluding goodwill, is 15.4 years.

The Company expects to realize revenue synergies, leverage, brand awareness, stronger margins, greater free cash flow generation, and expand the existing Novitex sales channels, and utilize the existing workforce. The Company also anticipates opportunities for growth through the ability to leverage additional future solutions and capabilities. These factors, among others, contributed to a purchase price in excess of the estimated fair value of Novitex's identifiable net assets assumed, and as a result, the Company has recorded goodwill in connection with this acquisition. The Company engaged a third party valuation firm to aid management in its analyses of the fair value of the assets and liabilities. All estimates, key assumptions, and forecasts were either provided by or reviewed by the Company. Approximately $14.0 million of the goodwill recorded was tax deductible, which was carried over from the tax basis of

the seller. For the year ended December 31, 2018, $677.5 million of revenue and $45.4 million of net loss are included in consolidated revenues and net loss, respectively, for Novitex. These results are included in the ITPS segment.

Transaction Costs

The Company incurred approximately $60.0 million in advisory, legal, accounting and management fees in conjunction with the Novitex Business Combination as of December 31, 2017, excluding contract cancellation and advising fees to HGM of $23.0 million described in Note 16. Additionally, $7.6 million was incurred related to equity issuance costs and $40.9 million was incurred in debt issuance costs.

Restructuring Charges

In February 2017, management performed a strategic review of human resources at Novitex for the purpose of assessing the business need for their employment and for the purpose of quantifying the synergies resulting from the acquisition. As a result, in July 2017, the Company communicated the termination of certain executives and non-executive Novitex employees.

The Company determined that costs associated with termination benefits should be accounted for separately from the acquisition, as a post-combination expense of the combined entity because the expense was incurred for the benefit of the combined entity. As of July 12, 2017, the Company recorded severance expense in the amount of $4.6 million related to the impacted executives and $0.1 million related to other terminations in the statement of operations. Severance expense was $0.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2018.

Asterion

On April 10, 2018, Exela completed the acquisition of Asterion International Group ("Asterion," the "Asterion Business Combination"), a well-established provider of technology driven business process outsourcing, document management and business process automation across Europe. The purchase price was approximately $19.5 million. The acquisition comes with minimal customer overlap and is strategic to expanding Exela's European business.

The acquired assets and assumed liabilities of Asterion were recorded at their estimated fair values. The purchase price allocation for Asterion is preliminary for estimates for items such as income taxes and subject to change within the respective measurement period, which will not extend beyond one year from the acquisition date. Measurement period adjustments will be recognized in the reporting period in which the adjustment amounts are determined.

The following table summarizes the consideration paid for Asterion and the preliminary fair value of the assets acquired and liabilities assumed at the acquisition date on April 10, 2018:

Assets Acquired:	
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 5,595
Accounts receivable	25,740
Other current assets	2,282
Inventories, net	1,137
Property, plant, and equipment, net	4,747
Deferred income tax assets	6,316
Other noncurrent assets	522
Intangible assets, net	3,525
Goodwill	1,493
Total identifiable assets acquired	$ 51,357
Liabilities Assumed:	
Accounts payable	$ (5,596)
Income tax payable	(5)
Accrued liabilities	(6,593)
Accrued compensation and benefits	(7,079)
Deferred revenue	(880)
Current portion of long term debt	(994)
Customer deposits	(462)
Pension liability	(7,135)
Other long-term liabilities	(1,324)
Deferred income tax liabilities	(1,171)
Capital lease obligations, net of current maturities	(650)
Total liabilities assumed	$ (31,889)
Total Consideration	$ 19,468

The majority of identifiable intangible assets consisted of customer relationships. Customer relationships were valued using the Income Approach, specifically the Multi-Period Excess Earnings method. This intangible acquired represents a Level 3 measurement as it is based on unobservable inputs reflecting Management's own assumptions about the inputs used in pricing the asset at fair value.

	Weighted Average Useful Life (in years)	Fair Value
Customer Relationships	9.5	$ 3,516

Through the acquisition of Asterion, we expect to leverage brand awareness, strengthen margins, and expand the existing Asterion sales channels. These factors, among others, contributed to a purchase price in excess of the estimated fair value of Asterion's identifiable net assets assumed, and as a result, the Company has recorded goodwill in connection with this acquisition. For the year ended December 31, 2018 Exela recognized $59.7 million in revenue related to Asterion in the Consolidated Statement of Operations.

4. Accounts Receivable

Accounts receivable, net consist of the following:

	December 31, 2018	December 31, 2017
Billed receivables	$ 226,252	$ 199,201
Unbilled receivables	39,498	28,449
Other	9,421	5,779
Less: Allowance for doubtful accounts	(4,359)	(3,725)
	$ 270,812	$ 229,704

Unbilled receivables represent balances recognized as revenue that have not been billed to the customer. The Company's allowance for doubtful accounts is based on a policy developed by historical experience and management judgment. Adjustments to the allowance for doubtful accounts may occur based on market conditions or specific client circumstances.

5. Prepaid Expenses and Other Current Assets

Prepaid expenses and other current assets consist of the following:

	December 31, 2018	December 31, 2017
Prepaids	$ 24,790	$ 22,869
Deposits	225	1,727
	$ 25,015	$ 24,596

6. Property, Plant and Equipment, Net

Property, plant, and equipment, which include assets recorded under capital leases, are stated at cost less accumulated depreciation, and amortization, and consist of the following:

	Estimated Useful Lives (in Years)	December 31, 2018	December 31, 2017
Land	N/A	$ 6,888	$ 7,744
Buildings and improvements	7 - 40	20,518	18,726
Leasehold improvements	3 - 12	56,589	51,257
Vehicles	5 - 7	717	870
Machinery and equipment	5 - 15	62,746	62,249
Computer equipment and software	3 - 8	130,862	116,580
Furniture and fixtures	5 - 15	8,724	7,136
		287,046	264,562
Less: Accumulated depreciation and amortization		(154,060)	(131,654)
Property, plant and equipment, net		$ 132,986	$ 132,908

Depreciation expense related to property, plant and equipment was $43.1 million, $31.7 million, and $22.8 million for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively.

7. Intangible Assets and Goodwill

Intangibles

Intangible assets are stated at cost or acquisition-date fair value less amortization and impairment and consists of the following:

	December 31, 2018		
	Gross Carrying Amount (a)	Amortization	Intangible Asset, net
Customer relationships	$ 507,905	$ (190,666)	$ 317,239
Developed technology	89,053	(85,967)	3,086
Trade names (b)	9,400	(3,100)	6,300
Outsource contract costs	46,342	(27,719)	18,623
Internally developed software	36,820	(6,278)	30,542
Trademarks	23,379	(23,370)	9
Non compete agreements	1,350	(1,350)	—
Assembled workforce	4,473	—	4,473
Purchased software	26,749	—	26,749
Intangibles, net	$ 745,471	$ (338,450)	$ 407,021

	December 31, 2017		
	Gross Carrying Amount (a)	Amortization	Intangible Asset, net
Customer relationships	$ 504,643	$ (135,962)	$ 368,681
Developed technology	89,076	(77,103)	11,973
Trade names (c)	13,100	—	13,100
Outsource contract costs	40,456	(17,526)	22,930
Internally developed software	28,254	(2,597)	25,657
Trademarks	23,370	(1,446)	21,924
Non compete agreements	1,350	(631)	719
Intangibles, net	$ 700,249	$ (235,265)	$ 464,984

(a) Amounts include intangibles acquired in the Novitex and Asterion Business Combination. See *Note 3-Business Combinations.*

(b) The carrying amount of trade names for 2018 is net of accumulated impairment losses of $43.1 million, of which $3.7 million was recognized in 2018.

(c) The carrying amount of trade names for 2017 is net of accumulated impairment losses of $39.4 million, of which $39.4 million was recognized in 2017.

In connection with the completion of the annual impairment test as of October 1, 2018, the Company recorded an impairment charge to goodwill and trade names of $44.4 million, including taxes, and $3.7 million. The impairment charges are included within Impairment of intangible assets in the consolidated statement of operations for the year ended December 31, 2018.

In connection with the completion of the annual impairment test as of October 1, 2017, the Company recorded an impairment charge to trade names of $6.3 million. Subsequent to the 2017 annual impairment test, the Company implemented a one year strategy to transition to a unified Exela brand beginning in 2018. As a result, the Company performed a quantitative analysis of its tradenames as of December 31, 2017, and recorded an additional impairment charge of $33.0 million. As part of the impairment analysis completed on December 31, 2017, the Company reconsidered the estimated useful lives of the trademarks, and reduced the estimated useful life to one year. The fair value of the tradenames was determined using the Relief from Royalty Method of the Income Approach. The

impairment charges resulted in decreases to the carrying values of the ITPS, HS, and LLPS trade names of $23.1 million, $9.6 million, and $6.6 million, respectively, and are included within Impairment of intangible assets in the consolidated statement of operations for the year ended December 31, 2017.

Aggregate amortization expense related to intangibles was $102.3 million, $67.2 million, and $56.8 million for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively.

Estimated intangibles amortization expense for the next five years and thereafter consists of the following:

	Estimated Amortization Expense
2019	$ 64,685
2020	58,363
2021	50,077
2022	44,687
2023	35,929
Thereafter	147,107
	$ 400,848

Goodwill

Goodwill by reporting segment consists of the following:

	Goodwill	Additions	Reductions	Currency translation adjustments	Goodwill(a)
ITPS	$ 159,394	$ 406,522 (c)	$ —	$ 299	$ 566,215
HS	86,786	—	—	—	86,786
LLPS	127,111	—	(32,787)(b)	—	94,324
Balance as of December 31, 2017	$ 373,291	$ 406,522	$ (32,787)	$ 299	$ 747,325
ITPS	$ 566,215	$ 5,580 (d)	$ —	$ (220)	$ 571,575
HS	86,786	—	—	—	86,786
LLPS	94,324	—	(44,427)(e)	—	49,897
Balance as of December 31, 2018	$ 747,325	$ 5,580	$ (44,427)	$ (220)	$ 708,258

(a) The carrying amount of goodwill for all periods presented is net of accumulated impairment losses of $137.9 million.

(b) The reduction in goodwill is due to $30.1 million for impairment recorded in the fourth quarter of 2017 and $2.7 million for the sale of Meridian Consulting Group, LLC in the first quarter of 2017.

(c) Addition to goodwill is primarily the result of the Novitex Business Combination (Refer to note 4), which resulted in $406.1 million of goodwill.

(d) Addition to goodwill due to the Asterion Business Combination (Refer to note 4) and immaterial acquisitions in the third and fourth quarter of 2018.

(e) The reduction in goodwill is due to $44.4 million, including taxes, for impairment recorded in the fourth quarter of 2018.

The Company recorded $406.1 million of goodwill as a result of the allocation of the purchase price between assets acquired and liabilities assumed in the Novitex Business Combination. Of the total amount of goodwill recorded, $47.0 million of goodwill is associated with net deferred tax liabilities recorded in connection with amortizable intangible assets acquired in the Novitex Business Combination. For the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, due to a decline in revenues and operations for the LLPS reporting unit, the Company recorded an impairment charge of $44.4 million, including taxes, and $30.1 million to the reporting unit's goodwill and trade names.

8. Accrued Liabilities and Other Long-Term Liabilities

Accrued liabilities consist of the following:

	December 31, 2018	December 31, 2017
Accrued taxes (exclusive of income taxes)	$ 10,606	$ 9,310
Accrued lease exit obligations	1,694	2,207
Accrued professional and legal fees	30,522	16,529
Deferred rent	1,421	1,204
Accrued interest	49,071	55,102
Accrued transaction costs	2,250	18,232
Other accruals	19,515	1,901
	$ 115,079	$ 104,485

Other Long-term liabilities consist of the following:

	December 31, 2018	December 31, 2017
Deferred revenue	$ 432	$ 424
Deferred rent	8,333	7,112
Accrued lease exit obligations	369	1,144
Accrued compensation expense	2,173	2,776
Other	4,093	3,248
	$ 15,400	$ 14,704

9. Long-Term Debt and Credit Facilities

Senior Secured Notes

Upon the closing of the Novitex Business Combination on July 12, 2017, the Company issued $1.0 billion in aggregate principal amount of 10.0% First Priority Senior Secured Notes due 2023 (the "Notes"). The Notes are guaranteed by certain subsidiaries of the Company. The Notes bear interest at a rate of 10.0% per year. The Company pays interest on the Notes on January 15 and July 15 of each year, commencing on January 15, 2018. The Notes will mature on July 15, 2023.

Debt Refinancing

Upon the closing of the Novitex Business Combination on July 12, 2017, the $1,050.7 million outstanding balance of SourceHOV related debt facilities and the $420.5 million outstanding balance of Novitex related debt facilities were paid off using proceeds from the Credit Agreement and issuance of the Notes.

In accordance with ASC 470 – Debt – Modifications and Extinguishments, as a result of certain lenders that participated in SourceHOV's debt structure prior to the refinancing and the Company's debt structure after the refinancing, it was determined that a portion of the refinancing of SourceHOV's first lien secured term loan and second lien secured term loan ("Original SourceHOV Term Loans") would be accounted for as a debt modification, and the remaining would be accounted for as an extinguishment. The Company incurred $28.9 million in debt issuance costs related to the new secured term loan, of which $2.8 million was third party costs. The Company recorded $7.0 million of original issue discount as part of the refinancing. The Company expensed $1.1 million of costs related to the modified debt and capitalized the remaining $27.8 million. The Company wrote off $30.5 million of the unamortized issuance

costs and discounts associated with the retirement of SourceHOV's credit facilities. The Company retained approximately $3.3 million and $3.5 million of debt issuance costs and debt discounts, respectively, associated with the modified portion of the Original SourceHOV Term Loans that will be amortized over the term of the new term loan, which are presented on the balance sheet as a contra-debt liability. The Company incurred a $5.0 million prepayment penalty related to the Original SourceHOV Term Loans that was recorded as a loss on extinguishment of debt.

The proceeds of the new debt financing were also used to pay fees and expenses incurred in connection with the Novitex Business Combination and for general corporate purposes.

Senior Credit Facilities

On July 12, 2017, the Company entered into a First Lien Credit Agreement with Royal Bank of Canada, Credit Suisse AG, Cayman Islands Branch, Natixis, New York Branch and KKR Corporate Lending LLC (the "Credit Agreement") providing Exela Intermediate LLC, a wholly owned subsidiary of the Company, upon the terms and subject to the conditions set forth in the Credit Agreement, (i) a $350.0 million senior secured term loan maturing July 12, 2023 with an original issue discount ("OID") of $7.0 million, and (ii) a $100.0 million senior secured revolving facility maturing July 12, 2022, none of which is currently drawn. As of December 31, 2018 and 2017 the Company had outstanding irrevocable letters of credit totaling $20.6 million and $20.9 million, respectively, under the senior secured revolving facility.

The Credit Agreement provides for the following interest rates for borrowings under the senior secured term facility and senior secured revolving facility: at the Company's option, either (1) an adjusted LIBOR, subject to a 1.0% floor in the case of term loans, or (2) a base rate, in each case plus an applicable margin. The initial applicable margin for the senior secured term facility is 7.5% with respect to LIBOR borrowings and 6.5% with respect to base rate borrowings. The initial applicable margin for the senior secured revolving facility is 7.0% with respect to LIBOR borrowings and 6.0% with respect to base rate borrowings. The applicable margin for borrowings under the senior secured revolving facility is subject to step-downs based on leverage ratios. The senior secured term loan is subject to amortization payments, commencing on the last day of the first full fiscal quarter of the Company following the closing date, of 0.6% of the aggregate principal amount for each of the first eight payments and 1.3% of the aggregate principal amount for payments thereafter, with any balance due at maturity.

Term Loan Repricing

On July 13, 2018, Exela successfully repriced the $343.4 million of term loans outstanding under its senior secured credit facilities (the "Repricing"). The Repricing was accomplished pursuant to a First Amendment to the First Lien Credit Agreement (the "First Amendment"), dated as of July 13, 2018, by and among the Company's subsidiaries Exela Intermediate Holdings LLC, Exela Intermediate, LLC, each "Subsidiary Loan Party" listed on the signature pages thereto, Royal Bank of Canada, as administrative agent, and each of the lenders party thereto, whereby the Company borrowed $343.4 million of refinancing term loans (the "Repricing Term Loans") to refinance the Company's existing senior secured term loans.

In accordance with ASC 470 – *Debt – Modifications and Extinguishments,* as a result of certain lenders that participated in Exela's debt structure prior to the Term Loan Repricing and the Company's debt structure after the refinancing, it was determined that a portion of the refinancing of Exela's senior secured credit facilities would be accounted for as a debt modification, and the remaining would be accounted for as an extinguishment. The company incurred $1.0 million in new debt issuance costs related to the refinancing, of which $1.0 million was expensed pursuant to modification accounting. The proportion of debt that was extinguished resulted in a write off of previously recognized debt issue costs of $0.1 million. Additionally, for the new lenders who exceeded the 10% test, less than $0.1 million was recorded as additional debt issue costs. All unamortized costs and discounts will be amortized over the life of the new term loan using the effective interest rate of the term loan.

The Repricing Term Loans will bear interest at a rate per annum of, at the Company's option, either (a) a LIBOR rate determined by reference to the costs of funds for Eurodollar deposits for the interest period relevant to such borrowing, adjusted for certain additional costs, subject to a 1.00% floor, or (b) a base rate determined by reference to the highest of (i) the federal funds rate plus 0.50%, (ii) the prime rate and (iii) the one-month adjusted LIBOR plus 1.00%, in each case plus an applicable margin of 6.50% for LIBOR loans and 5.50% for base rate loans. The interest rates applicable to the Repricing Term Loans are 100 basis points lower than the interest rates applicable to the existing senior secured term loans that were incurred on July 12, 2017 pursuant to the Credit Agreement. The Repricing Term Loans will mature on July 12, 2023, the same maturity date as the existing senior secured term loans.

Incremental Term Loan

On July 13, 2018, the Company successfully borrowed an additional $30.0 million pursuant to incremental term loans (the "Incremental Term Loans") under the First Amendment. The proceeds of the Incremental Term Loans may be used by the Company for general corporate purposes and to pay fees and expenses in connection with the First Amendment. The interest rates applicable to the Incremental Term Loans are the same as those for the Repricing Term Loans.

The Company may voluntarily repay the Repricing Term Loans and the Incremental Term Loans (collectively, the "Term Loans") at any time, without prepayment premium or penalty, except in connection with a repricing event as described in the following sentence, subject to customary "breakage" costs with respect to LIBOR rate loans. Any refinancing of the Term Loans through the issuance of certain debt or any repricing amendment, in either case, that constitutes a "repricing event" applicable to the Term Loans resulting in a lower yield occurring at any time during the first six months after July 13, 2018 will be accompanied by a 1.00% prepayment premium or fee, as applicable.

Other than as described above, the terms, conditions and covenants applicable to the Repricing Term Loans and the Incremental Term Loans are consistent with the terms, conditions and covenants that were applicable to the Existing Term Loans under the First Lien Credit. The Repricing and issuance of the Incremental Term Loans resulted in a partial debt extinguishment, for which Exela recognized $1.1 million in debt extinguishment costs in the third quarter of 2018.

Long- Term Debt Outstanding

As of December 31, 2018 and 2017, the following long-term debt instruments were outstanding:

	December 31,	
	2018	2017
Other (a)	$ 25,321	17,534
First lien credit agreement (b)	335,896	308,825
Senior secured notes (c)	974,443	970,300
Total debt	1,335,660	1,296,659
Less: Current portion of long-term debt	(29,237)	(20,565)
Long-term debt, net of current maturities	$ 1,306,423	$ 1,276,094

(a) Other debt represents outstanding loan balances associated with various hardware, software purchases, and maintenance along with loans entered into by subsidiaries of the Company.

(b) Net of unamortized original issue discount and debt issuance costs of $8.3 million and $24.5 million as of December 31, 2018 and $9.9 million and $29.1 million as of December 31, 2017.

(c) Net of unamortized original issue discount and debt issuance costs of $18.2 million and $7.3 million as of December 31, 2018 and $21.2 million and $8.5 million as of December 31, 2017.

As of December 31, 2018, maturities of long-term debt are as follows:

	Maturity
2019	$ 29,237
2020	23,156
2021	22,824
2022	19,084
2023	1,299,700
Thereafter	—
Total long-term debt	1,394,001
Less: Unamortized discount and debt issuance costs	(58,341)
	$ 1,335,660

10. Income Taxes

The Company provides for income taxes using an asset and liability approach, under which deferred income taxes are provided based upon enacted tax laws and rates applicable to periods in which the taxes become payable.

For financial reporting purposes, income/ (loss) before income taxes includes the following components:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
United States	$ (173,506)	$ (279,822)	$ (71,171)
Foreign	19,396	15,291	11,281
	$ (154,110)	$ (264,531)	$ (59,890)

The provision for federal, state, and foreign income taxes consists of the following:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
Federal			
Current	$ 1,308	$ (722)	$ —
Deferred	(1,998)	(59,425)	(8,961)
State			
Current	311	1,405	830
Deferred	2,330	(7,176)	(2,740)
Foreign			
Current	3,435	5,794	3,112
Deferred	3,021	(122)	(4,028)
Income Tax Expense (Benefit)	$ 8,407	$ (60,246)	$ (11,787)

The differences between income taxes expected by applying the U.S. federal statutory tax rate of 21% and the amount of income taxes provided are as follows:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
Tax at statutory rate	$ (32,363)	$ (92,586)	$ (20,962)
Add (deduct)			
State income taxes	(6,698)	(4,219)	1,483
Foreign income taxes	1,235	(565)	(1,356)
Nondeductible transaction costs	—	27,311	—
Nondeductible goodwill impairment	9,002	10,497	—
Permanent differences	940	438	4,405
Changes in valuation allowance	20,248	(7,285)	6,075
Unremitted earnings	4,735	—	1,686
Changes in U.S tax rates	—	(4,784)	—
Deemed mandatory repatriation	—	7,441	—
GILTI Inclusion	2,289	—	—
Expiration of tax attributes	8,354	—	—
Other	665	3,506	(3,118)
Income Tax Expense (Benefit)	$ 8,407	$ (60,246)	$ (11,787)

The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act ("TCJA") was signed by the President of the United States and enacted into law on December 22, 2017. This overhaul of the US tax law made a number of substantial changes, including the reduction of the corporate tax rate from 35% to 21%, establishing a dividends received deduction for dividends paid by foreign subsidiaries to the US, elimination or limitation of certain deductions (interest, domestic production activities and executive compensation), imposing a mandatory tax on previously unrepatriated earnings accumulated offshore since 1986 and establishing global minimum income tax and base erosion tax provisions related to offshore activities and affiliated party payments.

Accounting Standards Codification Topic 740, Income Taxes ("ASC 740") requires companies to account for the tax effects of changes in income tax rates and laws in the period in which legislation is enacted (December 22, 2017). ASC 740 does not specifically address accounting and disclosure guidance in connection with the income tax effects of the TCJA. Consequently, on December 22, 2017, the Securities and Exchange Commission staff issued Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118 ("SAB 118"), to address the application of ASC 740 in the reporting period that includes the date the TCJA was enacted. SAB 118 allows companies a reasonable period of time to complete the accounting for the income tax effects of the TCJA. The measurement period ends when the company has obtained, prepared and analyzed the information necessary to finalize its accounting, but cannot extend beyond one year.

During the year ended December 31, 2018, the Company has completed its accounting for the income tax effects of the TCJA in accordance with its understanding of the TCJA and the guidance available as of the balance sheet date. The Company measures deferred tax assets and liabilities using enacted tax rates that will apply in the years in which the temporary differences are expected to be recovered or paid. Accordingly, the Company's deferred tax assets and liabilities were remeasured to reflect the reduction in the U.S. corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%, resulting in a $9.4 million provisional tax benefit to Continuing Operations for the year ended December 31, 2017. The tax return for the year ended December 31, 2017 was completed during the SAB 118 measurement period and the Company determined the impact on the remeasurement of deferred tax assets and liabilities to be complete. The Company recognized a measurement period increase to income tax expense of $3.7 million to Continuing Operations related to the remeasurement of deferred tax assets and liabilities for the year ended December 31, 2018.

The Company recognized provisional income tax expense of $9.1 million due on estimated earnings and profits ("E&P") subject to the deemed mandatory repatriation for the year ended December 31, 2017. However, a payable was not recorded as the Company's net operating loss carryforward at December 31, 2017 was utilized to offset the mandatory repatriation tax. On August 1, 2018, the U.S. Treasury Department released proposed regulations addressing the one-time transition tax on undistributed foreign earnings, which was enacted as part of the TCJA. On the basis of

revised E&P computations that were completed during the SAB 118 measurement period, the Company has determined the transition tax calculation to be complete. The Company recognized an additional measurement-period adjustment of $2.4 million transition tax which was entirely offset by the Company's net operating loss carryforwards at December 31, 2017.

The TCJA subjects a US shareholder to tax on Global Intangible Low-taxed Income ("GILTI") earned by certain foreign subsidiaries. The FASB Staff Q&A, Topic 740, No. 5, Accounting for GILTI, states that an entity can make an accounting policy election to either recognize deferred taxes for temporary basis differences expected to reverse as GILTI in future years or provide for the tax expense related to GILTI in the year the tax is incurred as a period expense only. The Company has elected the accounting policy to recognize the tax expense related to GILTI in the year the tax is incurred as a period expense. At December 31, 2018, the Company has provided $2.3 million for tax impacts of GILTI.

Beginning in 2018, the TCJA also subjects a U.S. shareholder of a controlled foreign corporation to current tax on certain payments from corporations subject to US tax to related foreign persons, also referred to as base erosion and anti-abuse tax (BEAT). The BEAT provisions in the Tax Reform Act eliminates the deduction of certain base-erosion payments made to related foreign corporations, and impose a minimum tax if greater than regular tax. The Company has recorded $1.3 million tax expense related to BEAT for the year ended December 31, 2018.

The components of deferred income tax liabilities and assets are as follows:

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
Deferred income tax liabilities:		
Book over tax basis of intangible and fixed assets	$ (94,649)	$ (113,844)
Unremitted foreign earnings	(4,735)	—
Other, net	$ (4,078)	$ (2,684)
Total deferred income tax liabilities	(103,462)	(116,528)
Deferred income tax assets:		
Allowance for doubtful accounts and receivable adjustments	$ 1,676	$ 1,401
Inventory	1,629	1,807
Accrued liabilities	9,260	9,586
Net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards	184,381	196,633
Tax deductible goodwill	3,147	3,862
Disallowed interest deduction	27,005	—
Other, net	16,841	15,518
Total deferred income tax assets	$ 243,939	$ 228,807
Valuation allowance	(135,465)	(108,622)
Total net deferred income tax assets (liabilities)	**$ 5,012**	**$ 3,657**

Gross deferred tax assets are reduced by valuation allowances to the extent the Company determines it is not more-likely-than-not the deferred tax assets are expected to be realized. At December 31, 2018, the Company recognized $135.5 million of valuation allowances against gross deferred tax assets primarily related to disallowed interest deduction, net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards. Of this amount, approximately $76.2 million and $8.7 million of the total valuation allowance was related to U.S. federal and state limitations on the utilization of net operating loss carryforwards due to numerous changes in ownership, respectively. Approximately $21.8 million and $2.6 million of the total valuation allowance was related to U.S. federal and state disallowed interest deduction pursuant to the TCJA. The remaining $26.2 million of the valuation allowance was related to non-limited U.S. and non-US net operating losses and tax credits that are not expected to be realizable.

The net change during the year in the total valuation allowance was an increase of $26.8 million primarily related to the reduction of net regular deferred tax liability and increase of deferred tax assets related to disallowed interest deduction. The reduction of net deferred tax assets due to the rate revaluation decreased the amount of the valuation allowance by the same amount resulting in no overall net impact to the Company's income tax provision.

Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the Code), limits the amount of U.S. tax attributes (net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards) following a change in ownership. The Company has determined that an ownership change occurred under Section 382 on April 3, 2014 and October 31, 2014 for the Pangea group and on October 31, 2014 for the SourceHOV Holdings group ("2014 Reorganization"). The Section 382 limitations significantly limit the pre-acquisition Pangea net operating losses. Accordingly, upon the October 31, 2014 change in control, most of the historic Pangea federal net operating losses were limited and a valuation allowance has been established against the related deferred tax asset. Following the filing of the October 31, 2014, Pangea federal tax returns and further Section 382 analysis, management finalized the amount of the limitation and as a result, approximately $3.5 million of the valuation allowance was released. Management has concluded that the U.S. tax attributes after Section 382 limitations were applied are more likely than not to be realized. With regard to Pangea's foreign subsidiaries, it was determined that most deferred tax assets are not likely to be realized and valuation allowances have been established. The Section 382 limit that applied to the historic SourceHOV LLC group is greater than the net operating losses and tax credits generated in the predecessor periods. Therefore, no additional valuation allowances were established relating to Section 382 limitations other than the pre-2011 Section 382 limitations that applied.

Included in deferred tax assets are federal, foreign and state net operating loss carryforwards, federal general business credit carryforwards and state tax credit carryforwards due to expire beginning in 2019 through 2038. As of December 31, 2018, the Company has federal and state income tax net operating loss (NOL) carryforwards of $680.2 million and $472.7 million, which will expire at various dates from 2019 through 2038. Such NOL carryforwards expire as follows:

	Federal NOL	State and Local NOL
2019 - 2022	$ 107,956	$ 29,986
2023 - 2027	139,102	79,111
2028 - 2037	433,147	363,616
	$ 680,205	$ 472,713

As of December 31, 2018, the Company has foreign net operating loss carryforwards of $35.8 million, $4.1 million of which were generated by BancTec Holding N.V. and BancTec B.V., and will expire at various dates from 2021 through 2024, and $0.8 million of which were generated by Exela Poland, and will expire in 2023, and the rest of which can be carried forward indefinitely.

Since the 2014 Reorganization did not result in a new tax basis of assets and liabilities for the Company, some of the goodwill continues to be deductible over the remaining amortization period for tax purposes. At December 31, 2018, approximately $52.3 million of the Company goodwill is tax deductible, $22.8 million of which is carried over from the 2014 Reorganization. Additionally, the Company has tax deductible goodwill of $21.7 million in connection with the TransCentra acquisition, and $7.8 million in connection with the Novitex acquisition. These amounts was related to the tax basis carried over from the seller.

The Company adopted the provision of accounting for uncertainty in income taxes in the Topic of the ASC 740. ASC 740 clarifies the accounting for uncertain tax positions in the Company's financial statements and prescribes a recognition threshold and measurement attribute for financial statement disclosure of tax positions taken or expected to be taken on tax returns. The total amount of unrecognized tax benefits at December 31, 2018 is $1.5 million, and if recognized $0.7 million would benefit the effective tax rate. Total accrued interest and penalties recorded on the Consolidated Balance Sheet were $2.3 million and $3.0 million at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively. The total amount of interest and penalties recognized in the Income tax expense at December 31, 2018 was $(0.4) million. The Company does not anticipate a significant change in the amount of unrecognized tax benefits during 2018.

The following is a tabular reconciliation of the total amounts of unrecognized tax benefits:

	Year Ended December 31, 2018	2017	2016
Unrecognized tax benefits—January 1	$ 1,047	$ 999	$ 1,287
Gross increases—tax positions in prior period	301	48	—
Gross decreases—tax positions in prior period	—	—	(31)
Gross increases—tax positions in current period	128	—	45
Settlement	—	—	(103)
Lapse of statute of limitations	—	—	(199)
Unrecognized tax benefits—December 31	$ 1,476	$ 1,047	$ 999

The Company files income tax returns in the U.S. and various state and foreign jurisdictions. The statute of limitations for U.S. purposes is open for tax years ending on or after December 31, 2014, However, NOLs generated in years prior to 2014 and utilized in future periods may be subject to examination by U.S. tax authorities. State jurisdictions that remain subject to examination are not considered significant. The Company has significant foreign operations in India and Europe. The Company may be subject to examination by the India tax authorities for tax periods ending on or after March 31, 2012.

During the year ended December 31, 2018, the Company completed the calculation of the amount for the deemed mandatory repatriation of its total post-1986 earnings and profits that were previously deferred from US income taxes. The deemed mandatory repatriation was based in part on the amount of untaxed earnings held in cash and other specified assets. Although the adoption of a territorial tax system allows for the repatriation of foreign earnings after December 31, 2017 without incurring U.S. corporate income tax, withholding taxes by the foreign jurisdictions will be applied to any dividends remitted to the U.S. At December 31, 2018, the Company has not changed its prior indefinite reinvestment assertion on undistributed earnings related to certain foreign subsidiaries. Accordingly, no deferred taxes have been provided for withholding taxes or other taxes that would result upon repatriation of approximately $109.7 million of undistributed earnings from these foreign subsidiaries as those earnings continue to be permanently reinvested. However, the Company does not indefinitely reinvest earnings in Canada, China, India, Mexico and Philippines. At December 31, 2017, the Company did not obtain sufficient information, and therefore did not provide a provisional estimate to calculate the foreign withholding taxes on the undistributed earnings of these jurisdictions. During the fourth quarter of 2018, the Company has completed the calculation and recorded $4.7 million of foreign withholding taxes on the undistributed earnings of these jurisdictions pursuant to SAB 118.

11. Employee Benefit Plans

German Pension Plan

The Company's subsidiary in Germany provides pension benefits to eligible retirees. Employees eligible for participation includes all employees who started working for the Company prior to September 30, 1987 and have finished a qualifying period of at least 10 years. The Company accrues the cost of these benefits over the service lives of the covered employees based on an actuarial calculation. The Company uses a December 31 measurement date for this plan. The German pension plan is an unfunded plan and therefore has no plan assets.

U.K. Pension Plan

The Company's subsidiary in the United Kingdom provides pension benefits to eligible retirees and eligible dependents. Employees eligible for participation included all full-time regular employees who were more than three years from retirement prior to October 2001. A retirement pension or a lump-sum payment may be paid dependent upon length of service at the mandatory retirement age. The Company accrues the cost of these benefits over the service lives of the covered employees based on an actuarial calculation. The Company uses a December 31 measurement date for this plan.

The expected rate of return assumptions for plan assets relate solely to the UK plan and are based mainly on historical performance achieved over a long period of time (15 to 20 years) encompassing many business and economic cycles. The Company assumed a weighted average expected long-term rate on plan assets of 3.87%.

Norway Pension Plan

The Company's subsidiary in Norway provides pension benefits to eligible retirees and eligible dependents. Employees eligible for participation include all employees who were more than three years from retirement prior to March 2018. The Company accrues the cost of these benefits over the service lives of the covered employees based on an actuarial calculation. The Company uses a December 31 measurement date for this plan. The expected rate of return assumptions for plan assets relate solely to the Norway plan and are based mainly on historical performance achieved over a long period of time (10 to 20 years) encompassing many business and economic cycles. The Company assumed a weighted average expected long-term rate on plan assets of 4.3%.

Asterion Pension Plan

The Company acquired in 2018 through the Asterion Business Combination pension benefits to eligible retirees and eligible dependents. Employees eligible for participation included all full-time regular employees who were more than three years from retirement prior to July 2003. A retirement pension or a lump-sum payment may be paid dependent upon length of service at the mandatory retirement age. The Company accrues the cost of these benefits over the service lives of the covered employees based on an actuarial calculation. The Company uses a December 31 measurement date for this plan.

Funded Status

The change in benefit obligations, the change in the fair value of the plan assets and the funded status of the Company's pension plans (except for the German pension plan which is unfunded) and the amounts recognized in the Company's consolidated financial statements are as follows:

	Year ended December, 2018	2017
Change in Benefit Obligation:		
Benefit obligation at beginning of period	$ 91,514	$ 82,320
Additional obligation due to acquisition	5,317	—
Service cost	82	8
Interest cost	2,319	2,288
Actuarial loss (gain)	(5,643)	1,021
Plan amendments	2,490	—
Benefits paid	(1,436)	(1,797)
Foreign-exchange rate changes	(5,113)	7,674
Benefit obligation at end of year	$ 89,530	$ 91,514
Change in Plan Assets:		
Fair value of plan assets at beginning of period	$ 64,886	$ 52,538
Additional assets due to acquisition	2,189	—
Actual return on plan assets	(1,434)	6,579
Employer contributions	2,477	2,297
Benefits paid	(1,415)	(1,782)
Foreign-exchange rate changes	(3,734)	5,254
Fair value of plan assets at end of year	62,969	64,886
Funded status at end of year	$ (26,561)	$ (26,628)
Net amount recognized in the Consolidated Balance Sheets:		
Accrued compensation and benefits (a)	$ (1,811)	$ (1,551)
Pension liability (b)	$ (24,750)	$ (25,077)
Amounts recognized in accumulated other comprehensive loss, net of tax consist of:		
Net actuarial loss	(9,301)	(11,054)
Net amount recognized in accumulated other comprehensive loss, net of tax	$ (9,301)	$ (11,054)
Plans with underfunded or non-funded accumulated benefit obligation:		
Aggregate projected benefit obligation	$ 89,530	$ 91,514
Aggregate accumulated benefit obligation	$ 89,530	$ 91,514
Aggregate fair value of plan assets	$ 62,969	$ 64,886

(a) Germany pension, represents only a portion of the accrued compensation and benefits balance presented in the consolidated balance sheet.

(b) Consolidated balance of $25.3 million and $25.5 million includes UK and Asterion pension plans of $24.8 million and $25.1 million, for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively, and minimum regulatory benefit for a Philippines legal entity of $0.5 million. Pension balances for the Germany and Norway plans of $2.3 million are recorded in accrued retirement.

Amounts in Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss Expected to be Recognized in Net Periodic Benefit Costs in 2019

The liability recorded on the Company's consolidated balance sheets representing the net unfunded status of this plan is different than the cumulative expense recognized for this plan. The difference relates to losses that are deferred and that will be amortized into periodic benefit costs in future periods. These unamortized amounts are recorded in Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss in the consolidated balance sheets.

As of December 31, 2018, the estimated pre-tax amount that will be amortized from accumulated other comprehensive loss into net periodic benefit cost over the next year will be net actuarial loss of $1.9 million and prior service cost of $0.1 million.

Tax Effect on Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss

As of December 31, 2018 and 2017, the Company recorded actuarial losses of $9.3 million and $11.1 million, respectively, which is net of a deferred tax benefit of $1.7 million and $2.0 million, respectively.

Pension and Postretirement Expense

The components of the net periodic benefit cost are as follows:

	Year ended December 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
Service cost	$ 82	$ 8	$ 11
Interest cost	2,351	2,288	2,667
Expected return on plan assets	(1,862)	(2,392)	(2,623)
Amortization:			
Amortization of prior service cost	139	(134)	(141)
Amortization of net (gain) loss	—	2,063	891
Net periodic benefit cost	$ 710	$ 1,833	$ 805

Valuation

The Company uses the corridor approach and projected unit credit method in the valuation of its defined benefit plans for the UK, Germany, and Norway respectively. The corridor approach defers all actuarial gains and losses resulting from variances between actual results and economic estimates or actuarial assumptions. For defined benefit pension plans, these unrecognized gains and losses are amortized when the net gains and losses exceed 10% of the greater of the market-related value of plan assets or the projected benefit obligation at the beginning of the year. The amount in excess of the corridor is amortized over 15 years. Similarly, the Company used the Projected Unit Credit Method for the German Plan, and evaluated the assumptions used to derive the related benefit obligations consisting primarily of financial and demographic assumptions including commencement of employment, biometric decrement tables, retirement age, staff turnover. The projected unit credit method determines the present value of the Company's defined benefit obligations and related service costs by taking into account each period of service as giving rise to an additional unit of benefit entitlement and measures each unit separately in building up the final obligation. Benefit is attributed to periods of service using the plan's benefit formula, unless an employee's service in later years will lead to a materially higher of benefit than in earlier years, in which case a straight-line basis is used.

The following tables set forth the principal actuarial assumptions used to determine benefit obligation and net periodic benefit costs:

	December 31,							
	2018	2017	2018	2017	2018	2017	2018	2017
	UK		Germany		Norway		Asterion	
Weighted-average assumptions used to determine benefit obligations:								
Discount rate	2.80 %	2.50 %	1.90 %	1.70 %	2.60 %	2.40 %	1.80 %	N/A
Rate of compensation increase	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	1.75 %	1.50 %	2.50 %	N/A
Weighted-average assumptions used to determine net periodic benefit cost:								
Discount rate	2.10 %	2.70 %	1.90 %	N/A %	2.60 %	2.40 %	1.80 %	N/A
Expected asset return	3.87 %	4.34 %	3.68 %	N/A %	4.30 %	4.10 %	1.80 %	N/A
Rate of compensation increase	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	1.75 %	1.50 %	2.50 %	N/A

The Germany plan is an unfunded plan and therefore has no plan assets. The expected rate of return assumptions for plan assets relates solely to the UK plan and are based mainly on historical performance achieved over a long period of time (10 to 20 years) encompassing many business and economic cycles. Adjustments, upward and downward, may be made to those historical returns to reflect future capital market expectations; these expectations are typically derived from expert advice from the investment community and surveys of peer company assumptions.

The Company assumed a weighted average expected long-term rate of return on plan assets for the overall scheme of 3.87%. The Company's expected rate of return for equities is derived by applying an equity risk premium to the expected yield on the fixed-interest 15-year government gilts. The Company evaluated a number of indicators including prevailing market valuations and conditions, corporate earnings expectations, and the estimates of long-term economic growth and inflations to derive the equity risk premium. The expected return on the gilts and corporate bonds typically reflect market conditions at the balance sheet date, and the nature of the bond holdings.

The discount rate assumption was developed considering the current yield on an investment grade non-gilt index with an adjustment to the yield to match the average duration of the index with the average duration of the plan's liabilities. The index utilized reflected the market's yield requirements for these types of investments.

The inflation rate assumption was developed considering the difference in yields between a long-term government stocks index and a long-term index-linked stocks index. This difference was modified to consider the depression of the yield on index-linked stocks due to the shortage of supply and high demand, the premium for inflation above the expectation built into the yield on fixed-interest stocks and the government's target rate for inflation (CPI) at 2.1%. The assumptions used are the best estimates chosen from a range of possible actuarial assumptions which, due to the time scale covered, may not necessarily be borne out in practice.

Plan Assets

The investment objective for the plan is to earn, over moving fifteen to twenty year periods, the long-term expected rate of return, net of investment fees and transaction costs, to satisfy the benefit obligations of the plan, while at the same time maintaining sufficient liquidity to pay benefit obligations and proper expenses, and meet any other cash needs, in the short-to medium-term.

The Company's investment policy related to the defined benefit plan is to continue to maintain investments in government gilts and highly rated bonds as a means to reduce the overall risk of assets held in the fund. No specific targeted allocation percentages have been set by category, but are at the direction and discretion of the plan trustees. During 2018 and 2017, all contributions made to the fund were in these categories.

The weighted average allocation of plan assets by asset category is as follows:

	December 31, 2018	2017	2016
U.S. and international equities	28.0 %	45.0 %	42.0 %
UK government and corporate bonds	10.0	20.0	21.0
Diversified growth fund	40.0	35.0	37.0
Liability Driven Investments	22.0	N/A	N/A
Total	100.0 %	100.0 %	100.0 %

The following tables set forth, by category and within the fair value hierarchy, the fair value of the Company's pension assets at December 31, 2018 and 2017:

	December 31, 2018			
	Total	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Asset Category:				
Cash	$ 135	$ 135	$ —	$ —
Equity Funds:	—			
U.S.	10,654	—	10,654	—
International	7,102	—	7,102	—
Fixed Income Securities:	—			
Corporate bonds	6,270	—	6,270	—
Other investments:	—			
Diversified growth fund	25,677	—	25,677	—
Liability Driven Investments	13,939	—	13,939	—
Total fair value	$ 63,777	$ 135	$ 63,642	$ —

	December 31, 2017			
	Total	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Asset Category:				
Cash	$ 256	$ 256	$ —	$ —
Equity Funds:				
U.S.	17,307	—	17,307	—
International	11,539	—	11,539	—
Fixed Income Securities:				
UK Gilts	12,884	—	12,884	—
Other investments:				
Diversified growth fund	22,900	—	22,900	—
Total fair value	$ 64,886	$ 256	$ 64,630	$ —

The Company identified an immaterial error in the footnotes to the previously issued financial statements as of December 31, 2017. The previously issued financial statements incorrectly reflected investments in Equities, Fixed Income Securities, and Other investments as of December 31, 2017 as Level 1 assets. These amounts have been properly classified as Level 2 assets within the fair value hierarchy table above.

The plan assets for the UK are categorized as follows, as applicable:

Level 1: Any asset for which a unit price is available and used without adjustment, cash balances, etc.

Level 2: Any asset for which the amount disclosed is based on market data, for example a fair value measurement based on a present value technique (where all calculation inputs are based on data).

Level 3: Other assets. For example, any asset value with a fair value adjustment made not based on available indices or data.

Employer Contributions

The Company's funding is based on governmental requirements and differs from those methods used to recognize pension expense. The Company made contributions of $3.1 million and $2.3 million to its pension plans during the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively. The Company has fully funded the pension plans for 2018 based on current plan provisions. The Company expects to contribute $2.2 million to the pension plans during 2019, based on current plan provisions.

Estimated Future Benefit Payments

The estimated future pension benefit payments expected to be paid to plan participants are as follows:

	Estimated Benefit Payments
Year ended December 31,	
2019	$ 2,193
2020	1,720
2021	1,736
2022	2,069
2023	1,943
2024 - 2028	15,838
Total	$ 25,499

12. Commitments and Contingencies

Litigation

The Company is, from time to time, involved in certain legal proceedings, inquiries, claims and disputes, which arise in the ordinary course of business. Although management cannot predict the outcomes of these matters, management does not believe these actions will have a material, adverse effect on the Company's consolidated balance sheets, consolidated statements of operations or consolidated statements of cash flows.

Appraisal Demand

On September 21, 2017, former stockholders of SourceHOV, who allege combined ownership of 10,304 shares of SourceHOV common stock, filed a petition for appraisal pursuant to 8 Del. C. § 262 in the Delaware Court of Chancery, captioned Manichaean Capital, LLC, et al. v. SourceHOV Holdings, Inc., C.A. No. 2017-0673-JRS (the "Appraisal Action"). The Appraisal Action arises out of the Novitex Business Combination, which gave rise to appraisal rights pursuant to 8 Del. C. § 262. In the Appraisal Action, the petitioners seek, among other things, a determination of the fair value of their shares at the time of the Novitex Business Combination; an order that SourceHOV pay that value to the petitioners, together with interest at the statutory rate; and an award of costs, attorneys' fees, and other expenses.

On October 12, 2017, SourceHOV filed its answer to the petition and a verified list pursuant to 8 Del. C. § 262(f). Discovery in the Appraisal Action is not yet complete. Trial is currently scheduled for June 2019. At this stage of the litigation, the Company is unable to predict the outcome of the Appraisal Action or estimate any loss or range of loss that may arise from the Appraisal Action. Pursuant to the terms of the Novitex Business Combination Agreement, if such appraisal rights are perfected, a corresponding portion of shares of our Common Stock issued to Ex-Sigma 2 LLC, our principal stockholder, will be forfeited at such time as the PIPE Financing (as defined in the Consent, Waiver and Amendment dated June 15, 2017) is repaid. The Company intends to vigorously defend against the Appraisal Action.

Lease Commitments

The Company leases various office buildings, machinery, equipment, and vehicles. Future minimum lease payments under capital leases, included in long-term obligations, and non-cancelable operating leases at December 31, 2018 are as follows:

	Capital Leases	Operating Lease	Total
2019	$ 20,080	$ 38,057	$ 58,137
2020	11,851	29,346	41,197
2021	9,018	22,239	31,257
2022	4,169	16,782	20,951
2023	2,244	12,302	14,546
Thereafter	3,617	18,874	22,491
Total minimum lease payments	$ 50,979	$ 137,600	$ 188,579
Less: Amounts representing interest	(6,743)		
Total net minimum lease payments	44,236		
Less: Current portion of obligations under capital leases	(17,498)		
Long-term portion of obligations under capital leases	$ 26,738		

Rent expense for all operating leases was $83.8 million, $60.0 million, and $36.7 million for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively.

Contract-Related Contingencies

The Company has certain contingent liabilities that arise in the ordinary course of providing services to its customers. These contingencies are generally the result of contracts that require the Company to comply with certain performance measurements or the delivery of certain services by a specified deadline. The Company believes the liability, if any, incurred under these contract provisions will not have a material adverse effect on the Company's consolidated balance sheets, consolidated statements of operations or consolidated statements of cash flows.

The Company has certain contingent liabilities related to prior acquisitions. The Company adjusts these liabilities to fair value at each reporting period. The Company had a $0.7 million liability related to HandsOn Global Management's ("HGM") acquisition of BancTec, Inc. for both December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively. The fair value is determined using an earn out method based on the agreement terms. This fair value measurement represents a Level 3 measurement as it is based on significant inputs not observable in the market. Significant judgment is employed in determining the appropriateness of these assumptions.

13. Fair Value Measurement

Assets and Liabilities Measured at Fair Value on a Non-Recurring Basis

The carrying amount of assets and liabilities including cash and cash equivalents, accounts receivable and accounts payable approximated their fair value as of December 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017 due to the relative short maturity of these instruments. Management estimates the fair values of the secured term loan and secured notes at approximately 98.0% and 95.5%, respectively, of the respective principal balance outstanding as of December 30, 2018. The carrying value approximates the fair value for the long-term debt. The Company acquired $11.7 million of other long-term debt from Novitex (*refer to Note 3*), which primarily relates to the financing of equipment. Other debt represents the Company's outstanding loan balances associated with various hardware and software purchases along with loans entered into by subsidiaries of the Company and as such, the cost incurred would approximate fair value. Property and equipment, intangible assets, capital lease obligations, and goodwill are not required to be re-measured to fair value on a recurring basis. These assets are evaluated for impairment if certain triggering events occur. If such evaluation indicates that impairment exists, the respective asset is written down to its fair value.

The Company determined the fair value of its long-term debt using Level 2 inputs including the recent issue of the debt, the Company's credit rating, and the current risk-free rate. The Company's contingent liabilities related to prior acquisitions are re-measured each period and represent a Level 2 measurement as it is based on using an earn out method based on the agreement terms.

The Company determined the fair value of the interest rate swap using Level 2 inputs. The Company uses closing prices as provided by a third party institution. *(Refer to Note 2 - Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies).*

The following table provides the carrying amounts and estimated fair values of the Company's financial instruments as of December 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017:

As of December 31, 2018	Carrying Amount	Fair Value	Fair Value Measurements Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Recurring and nonrecurring assets and liabilities:					
Acquisition contingent liability	$ 721	$ 721	$ —	$ —	$ 721
Long-term debt	1,306,423	1,316,306	—	1,316,306	—
Interest rate swap	—	—	—	—	—
Goodwill	708,258	708,258	—	—	708,258

As of December 31, 2017	Carrying Amount	Fair Value	Fair Value Measurements Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Recurring and nonrecurring assets and liabilities:					
Acquisition contingent liability	$ 721	$ 721	$ —	$ —	$ 721
Long-term debt	1,276,094	1,308,478	—	1,308,478	—
Interest rate swap	1,297	1,297	—	1,297	—
Goodwill	747,325	747,325	—	—	747,325

The significant unobservable inputs used in the fair value of the Company's acquisition contingent liabilities are the discount rate, growth assumptions, and revenue thresholds. Significant increases (decreases) in the discount rate would have resulted in a lower (higher) fair value measurement. Significant increases (decreases) in the forecasted financial information would have resulted in a higher (lower) fair value measurement. For all significant unobservable inputs used in the fair value measurement of the Level 3 liabilities, a change in one of the inputs would not necessarily result in a directionally similar change in the other based on the current level of billings.

The following table reconciles the beginning and ending balances of net assets and liabilities classified as Level 3 for which a reconciliation is required:

	December 31, 2018	2017
Balance as of January 1,	$ 721	$ 721
Payments/Reductions	—	—
Balance as of December 31,	$ 721	$ 721

During 2018 and 2017, goodwill impairment charges totaling $44.4 million, including taxes, were recognized within our LLPS segment. See Note 7.

14. Stock-Based Compensation

At Closing, SourceHOV had 24,535 restricted stock units ("RSUs") outstanding under its 2013 Long Term Incentive Plan ("2013 Plan"). Simultaneous with the Closing, the 2013 Plan, as well as all vested and unvested RSUs under the 2013 Plan, were assumed by Ex-Sigma, LLC ("Ex-Sigma"), an entity formed by the former SourceHOV equity holders, which is also the Company's principal stockholder. In accordance with U.S. GAAP, the Company will continue to incur compensation expense related to the 9,880 unvested RSUs as of July 12, 2017 on a straight-line basis until fully vested, as the recipients of the RSUs are employees of the Company. Subject to continuous employment and other terms of the 2013 Plan, all remaining unvested RSU's with initial vesting period of 3 or 4 years will vest in April 2019. As of December 31, 2018 there are 2,675 nonvested shares related to the 2013 Plan with a weighted average remaining contractual life of .33 years and a weighted average aggregate intrinsic value of $1,633.

Exela 2018 Stock Incentive Plan

On December 20, 2017, Exela's 2018 Stock Incentive Plan (the "2018 Plan") became effective. The 2018 Plan provides for the grant of incentive and nonqualified stock options, restricted stock, restricted stock units, stock appreciation rights, performance awards, and other stock-based compensation to eligible participants. Under the 2018 Plan, stock options are granted at a price per share not less than 100% of the fair market value per share of the underlying stock at the grant date. The Company determines the vesting period for each option award on the grant date, and the options generally expire 10 years from the grant date. The Company will be authorized to issue up to 8,196,482 shares of Common Stock.

A summary of the status of restricted stock units related to the 2018 Plan as of December 31, 2018 is presented as follows:

	Number of Shares	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value	Average Remaining Contractual Life (Years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value ($)
Shares granted	1,020,220	5.86	—	—
Shares forfeited	—	—	—	—
Shares vested	(126,923)	—	—	—
Nonvested as of December 31, 2018	893,297	$ 5.86	0.76	$ 5,239

Options

Options are granted with an exercise price not less than fair market value on the date of grant and expire no later than ten years after the date of grant. Options granted under the 2018 Plan generally require no less than a two or four year ratable vesting period. The weighted average remaining contractual life for stock options is 9.68 years. Stock option activity in the first twelve months of 2018 is summarized in the following table:

	Outstanding	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Average Remaining Vesting Period (Years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value ($)
Granted	3,570,300	$ 6.06	—	—
Exercised	—	—	—	—
Canceled	—	—	—	—
Expired	—	—	—	—
Balance at December 31, 2018	3,570,300	$ 6.06	2.92	$ 9,590

As of December 31, 2018, there was approximately $13.9 million of total unrecognized compensation expense related to non-vested awards for the 2013 Plan and 2018 Plan, which will be recognized over the respective service period. Stock-based compensation expense is recorded within Selling, general, and administrative expenses. The Company incurred total compensation expense of $7.6 million, $6.7 million, and $7.1 million related to the 2013 Plan and 2018 Plan awards for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016.

15. Stockholders' Equity

The following description summarizes the material terms and provisions of the securities that the Company has authorized.

Common Stock

The Company is authorized to issue 1,600,000,000 shares of Common Stock, par value $0.0001 per share. Except as otherwise required by law or as otherwise provided in any certificate of designation for any series of preferred stock or as provided for in the Director Nomination Agreements, the holders of Exela Common Stock possess all voting power for the election of Exela's directors and all other matters requiring stockholder action and will at all times vote together as one class on all matters submitted to a vote of Exela stockholders. Holders of Exela Common Stock are entitled to one vote per share on matters to be voted on by stockholders. Holders of Exela Common Stock will be entitled to receive such dividends and other distributions, if any, as may be declared from time to time by the board of directors in its discretion out of funds legally available therefore and shall share equally on a per share basis in such dividends and distributions. The holders of the Common Stock have no conversion, preemptive or other subscription rights and there are no sinking fund or redemption provisions applicable to the common stock. In January 2018, 1,625,000 shares of Series A Preferred Stock were converted into 1,987,767 shares of common stock. As of December 31, 2018, there were 152,692,140 shares of Common Stock issued and 150,142,955 shares outstanding.

Preferred Stock

The Company is authorized to issue 20,000,000 shares of preferred stock with such designations, voting and other rights and preferences as may be determined from time to time by the board of directors. At December 31, 2018, the Company had 4,569,233 shares of Series A Preferred Stock outstanding. The par value of the Series A Preferred Stock is $0.0001 per share. Each share of Series A Preferred Stock will be convertible at the holder's option, at any time after the six month anniversary and prior to the third anniversary of the issue date, initially into 1.2226 shares of Exela Common Stock (assuming a conversion price of $8.80 per share and a third anniversary expected liquidation preference of $10.75911 per the below). Due to a Fundamental Change (as defined in the Certificate of Designations, Preferences, Rights and Limitations of Series A Preferred Stock) that occurred on August 1, 2017 as described in the beneficial conversion feature section of Note 2, holders of Series A Preferred Stock were able to convert their shares prior to the six month anniversary. Based on such assumed conversion rate, approximately 11,240,869 shares of Exela Common Stock would be issuable upon conversion of all of the shares of Series A Preferred Stock at the six month anniversary of the issue date. As of December 31, 2018, an additional 5,586,344 shares of Common Stock are issuable upon conversion of the remaining 4,569,233 shares of Series A Preferred Stock.

Holders of the Series A Preferred Stock will be entitled to receive cumulative dividends at a rate per annum of 10% of the Liquidation Preference per share of Series A Preferred Stock, paid or accrued quarterly in arrears. From the issue date until the third anniversary of the issue date, the amount of all accrued but unpaid dividends on the Series A Preferred Stock will be added to the Liquidation Preference without any action by the Company's board of directors. For the year ended December 31, 2018, this amount was $3.7 million as reflected on the Consolidated Statement of Operations. The cumulative accrued but unpaid dividends of the Series A Preferred Stock since their inception on July 12, 2017 is $6.1 million. The per share average of cumulative preferred dividends is 0.8 dollars.

Following the third anniversary of the issue date, dividends on the Series A Preferred Stock will be accrued by adding to the Liquidation Preference or paid in cash, or a combination thereof. In addition, holders of the Series A Preferred Stock will participate in any dividend or distribution of cash or other property paid in respect of the Common Stock pro rata with the holders of the Common Stock (other than certain dividends or distributions that trigger an adjustment to the conversion rate, as described in the Certificate of Designations), as if all shares of Series A Preferred Stock had been converted into Common Stock immediately prior to the date on which such holders of the Common Stock became entitled to such dividend or distribution.

Treasury Stock

On November 8, 2017, the Company's board of directors authorized a share buyback program (the "Share Buyback Program"), pursuant to which the Company may, from time to time, purchase up to 5,000,000 shares of its Common Stock. Share repurchases may be executed through various means, including, without limitation, open market transactions, privately negotiated transactions or otherwise. The decision as to whether to purchase any shares and the timing of purchases, if any, will be based on the price of the Company's Common Stock, general business and market conditions and other investment considerations and factors. The Share Buyback Program does not obligate the Company to purchase any shares and expires in 24 months. The Share Buyback Program may be terminated or amended by the Company's board of directors in its discretion at any time. We purchased 2,499,885 shares in 2018 at an average share price of $4.71. As of December 31, 2018, 2,549,185 shares had been repurchased under the share buyback program and they are held in treasury stock. The Company records treasury stock using the cost method.

Warrants

At December 31, 2018, there were a total of 34,988,302 warrants outstanding. As part of its IPO, Quinpario had issued 35,000,000 units including one share of Common Stock and one warrant. The warrants are traded on the OTC Bulletin board as of December 31, 2018.

Each warrant entitles the holder to purchase one-half of one share of Common Stock at a price of $5.75 per half share ($11.50 per whole share). Warrants may be exercised only for a whole number of shares of Common Stock. No fractional shares will be issued upon exercise of the warrants. Each warrant is currently exercisable and will expire July 12, 2022 (five years after the completion of the Novitex Business Combination), or earlier upon redemption.

The Company may call the warrants for redemption at a price of $0.01 per warrant upon a minimum of 30 days' prior written notice of redemption, if, and only if, the last sales price of the shares of Common Stock equals or exceeds $24.00 per share for any 20 trading days within a 30 trading day period (the "30-day trading period") ending three business days before the Company sends the notice of redemption, and if, and only if, there is a current registration statement in effect with respect to the shares of Common Stock underlying such warrants commencing five business days prior to the 30-day trading period and continuing each day thereafter until the date of redemption.

16. Related-Party Transactions

Leasing Transactions

Certain operating companies lease their operating facilities from HOV RE, LLC and HOV Services Limited, which are affiliates through common interest held by Ex-Sigma 2 LLC, our largest stockholders. The rental expense for these operating leases was $0.7 million, $0.7 million, and $0.6 million for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively.

Consulting Agreements

The Company receives services from Oakana Holdings, Inc. The Company and Oakana Holdings, Inc. are related through a family relationship between certain stockholders and the president of Oakana Holdings, Inc. The expense recognized for these services was approximately $0.2 million and $0.1 million for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively. For the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company incurred no expenses for these services.

The Company receives consulting services from Shadow Pond, LLC. Shadow Pond, LLC is wholly-owned and controlled by Vik Negi, our Executive Vice President Treasury and Business Affairs. The consulting arrangement was established to compensate Mr. Negi for his services to the Company prior to becoming an employee. The expense recognized for these services was approximately $0.1 million, $0.5 million, and $0.5 million for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The consulting arrangement with Shadow Pond, LLC terminated on April 1, 2018 and Mr. Negi continues to provide services as an employee of the Company.

Relationship with HandsOn Global Management

The Company incurred management fees to HGM, SourceHOV's former owner, of $6.0 million for each of the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016. The contract with HGM was terminated upon consummation of the Novitex Business Combination, and no fees were payable after July 12, 2017.

The Company incurred reimbursable travel expenses to HGM of less than $0.1 million $0.9 million and $1.7 million for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Pursuant to a master agreement dated January 1, 2015 between Rule 14, LLC and SourceHOV, the Company incurs marketing fees to Rule 14, LLC, a portfolio company of HGM. Similarly, SourceHOV is party to ten master agreements with entities affiliated with HGM's ventures portfolio, each of which were entered into during 2015 and 2016. Each master agreement provides SourceHOV with free use of technology and includes a reseller arrangement pursuant to which SourceHOV is entitled to sell these services to third parties. Any revenue earned by SourceHOV in such third-party sale is shared 75%/25% with each of HGM's venture affiliates in favor of SourceHOV. The brands Zuma, Athena, Peri, BancMate, Spring, Jet, Teletype, CourtQ and Rewardio are part of the HGM ventures portfolio. SourceHOV has the license to use and resell such brands, as described therein. We incurred fees relating to these agreements of $0.6 million, $0.6 million, and $0.5 million for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

During 2017, the Company incurred contract cancellation and advising fees to HGM of $23.0 million, $10.0 million of which was paid by the issuance of 1,250,000 shares of Common Stock, relating to the Novitex Business Combination. No such fees were incurred in 2018.

Relationship with HOV Services, Ltd.

HOV Services, Ltd., a former stockholder of SourceHOV who currently owns equity interest in the Company through Ex-Sigma, provides the Company data capture and technology services. The expense recognized for these services was approximately $1.6 million, $1.7 million, and $1.7 million for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively, and is included in cost of revenue in the consolidated statements of operations.

Relationship with Apollo Global Management, LLC

The Company provides services to and receives services from certain companies controlled by investment funds affiliated with Apollo Global Management, LLC ("Apollo"). Investment funds affiliated with Apollo also control one of our largest stockholders, Novitex Holdings, which has the right to designate two of the Company's directors and has certain other consent rights under the Director Nomination Agreement. For the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 there were related party revenues of $0.6 million and $0.3 million, respectively, for services received from an Apollo affiliated company with a common Apollo designated director. For the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company incurred no expenses for these services.

On January 18, 2017, Novitex Solutions entered into a master purchase and professional services agreement with Caesars Enterprise Services, LLC (''Caesars''), a portion of which is owned by an affiliate of Apollo. Pursuant to this master purchase and professional services agreement, Novitex Solutions provides managed print services to Caesars, including general equipment operation, supply management, support services and technical support. We recognized revenue of $4.1 million and $1.2 million for year ended December 31, 2018 and 2017. For the year ended December 31, 2016 there were no revenues from this agreement.

On May 5, 2017, Novitex Solutions entered into a master services agreement with ADT LLC, a portion of which is owned by affiliates of Apollo. Pursuant to this master services agreement, Novitex Solutions provides ADT LLC with mailroom and onsite mail delivery services at an ADT LLC office location and managed print services, including supply management, equipment maintenance and technical support services. We recognized revenue of $0.6 million and less than $0.1 million in our consolidated statements of operations from ADT LLC under this master services agreement for the year ended December 31, 2018 and 2017. For the year ended December 31, 2016 there were no revenues from this agreement.

On July 20, 2017, Novitex Solutions entered into a master services agreement with Diamond Resorts Centralized Services Company. Diamond Resorts Centralized Services Company is controlled by investment funds affiliated with Apollo. Pursuant to this master services agreement, Novitex Solutions provides commercial print and promotional product procurement services to Diamond Resorts Centralized Services Company, including sourcing, inventory management and fulfillment services. The Company recognized revenue of $5.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 and cost of revenue of $0.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2018 from Diamond Resorts Centralized Services Company under this master services agreement. No revenue or cost of revenue was recognized in 2017 or 2016 under this agreement.

In April 2016, Novitex Solutions entered into a master services agreement with Presidio Networked Solutions Group, LLC ("Presidio Group"), a wholly owned subsidiary of Presidio, Inc., a portion of which is owned by affiliates of Apollo and with a common Apollo designated director. Pursuant to this master services agreement, Presidio Group provides Novitex Solutions with employees, subcontractors, and/or goods and services. For the year ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 there were related party expenses of $0.7 million and $0.3 million, respectively, for this service. For the year ended December 31, 2016 there were no expenses from this agreement.

Payable Balances with Affiliates

Payable balances with affiliates as of December 31, 2018 and 2017 are as follows:

	December 31, 2018 Payable	December 31, 2017 Payable
HOV Services, Ltd	$ 405	$ 286
Rule 14	127	158
HGM	6,998	13,689
Apollo affiliated company	205	312
	$ 7,735	$ 14,445

17. Segment and Geographic Area Information

The Company's operating segments are significant strategic business units that align its products and services with how it manages its business, approach the markets and interacts with its clients. The Company is organized into three segments: ITPS, HS, and LLPS.

ITPS: The ITPS segment provides a wide range of solutions and services designed to aid businesses in information capture, processing, decisioning and distribution to customers primarily in the financial services, commercial, public sector and legal industries.

HS: The HS segment operates and maintains a consulting and outsourcing business specializing in both the healthcare provider and payer markets.

LLPS: The LLPS segment provides a broad and active array of legal services in connection with class action, bankruptcy labor, claims adjudication and employment and other legal matters.

The chief operating decision maker reviews operating segment revenue and cost of revenue. The Company does not allocate Selling, general, and administrative expenses, depreciation and amortization, interest expense and sundry,

net. The Company manages assets on a total company basis, not by operating segment, and therefore asset information and capital expenditures by operating segments are not presented.

	Year December 31, 2018			
	ITPS	HS	LLPS	Total
Revenue	1,273,647	228,015	84,560	1,586,222
Cost of revenue	1,007,301	151,367	51,206	1,209,874
Selling, general and administrative expenses				184,651
Depreciation and amortization				145,485
Impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets				48,127
Related party expense				4,334
Interest expense, net				153,095
Loss on extinguishment of debt				1,067
Sundry expense (income), net				(3,271)
Other income, net				(3,030)
Net loss before income taxes				$ (154,110)

	Year ended December 31, 2017			
	ITPS	HS	LLPS	Total
Revenue	827,110	233,595	91,619	1,152,324
Cost of revenue	620,719	152,864	55,560	829,143
Selling, general and administrative expenses				220,955
Depreciation and amortization				98,890
Impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets				69,437
Related party expense				33,431
Interest expense, net				128,489
Loss on extinguishment of debt				35,512
Sundry expense (income), net				2,295
Other income, net				(1,297)
Net loss before income taxes				$ (264,531)

	Year December 31, 2016			
	ITPS	HS	LLPS	Total
Revenue	439,924	247,796	102,206	789,926
Cost of revenue	296,848	158,800	63,473	519,121
Selling, general and administrative expenses				130,437
Depreciation and amortization				79,639
Related party expense				10,493
Interest expense, net				109,414
Sundry expense (income), net				712
Net loss before income taxes				$ (59,890)

The following table presents revenues by principal geographic area where the Company's customers are located for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017, and 2016.

	Years ended December 31, 2018	2017	2016
United States	$ 1,347,516	$ 1,000,827	$ 654,565
Europe	211,314	136,531	131,287
Other	27,392	14,966	4,074
Total Consolidated Revenue	$ 1,586,222	$ 1,152,324	$ 789,926

18. Selected Quarterly Financial Results (Unaudited)

The following tables show a summary of the Company's quarterly financial information for each of the four quarters of 2018 and 2017:

	Q1 2018	Q2 2018	Q3 2018	Q4 2018
Revenue	$ 393,167	$ 410,382	$ 383,030	$ 399,643
Cost of revenue (exclusive of depreciation and amortization)	293,792	313,954	295,936	306,192
Selling, general and administrative expenses	45,595	46,723	44,913	47,420
Depreciation and amortization	38,019	36,368	35,041	36,057
Impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets	—	—	—	48,127
Related party expense	1,105	1,402	759	1,068
Operating income (loss)	14,656	11,935	6,381	(39,221)
Other expense (income), net:				
Interest expense, net	38,017	38,527	38,339	38,212
Loss on extinguishment of debt	—	—	1,067	—
Sundry expense (income), net	(64)	(2,325)	(2,571)	1,689
Other income, net	(3,328)	(704)	(781)	1,783
Net loss before income taxes	(19,969)	(23,563)	(29,673)	(80,905)
Income tax (expense) benefit	(4,025)	(1,619)	733	(3,496)
Net loss	(23,994)	(25,182)	(28,940)	(84,401)
Cumulative dividends for Series A Preferred Stock	(914)	(914)	(914)	(914)
Net loss attributable to common stockholders	$ (24,908)	$ (26,096)	$ (29,854)	$ (85,315)
Weighted average outstanding common shares	152,140,117	152,259,589	151,663,670	152,343,823
Earnings per share:				
Basic and diluted	$ (0.16)	$ (0.17)	$ (0.20)	$ (0.54)

	Q1 2017	Q2 2017	Q3 2017	Q4 2017
Revenue	$ 218,260	$ 209,382	$ 338,393	$ 386,289
Cost of revenue (exclusive of depreciation and amortization)	143,708	140,418	255,116	289,901
Selling, general and administrative expenses	35,581	34,998	102,048	48,328
Depreciation and amortization	21,320	21,406	28,052	28,112
Impairment of goodwill and other intangible assets	—	—	—	69,437
Related party expense	2,385	2,456	26,892	1,698
Operating income (loss)	15,266	10,104	(73,715)	(51,187)
Other expense (income), net:				
Interest expense, net	26,219	27,869	37,652	36,749
Loss on extinguishment of debt	—	—	35,512	—
Sundry expense (income), net	2,724	(327)	563	(665)
Other income, net	—	—	—	(1,297)
Net loss before income taxes	(13,677)	(17,438)	(147,442)	(85,974)
Income tax (expense) benefit	(2,004)	(2,074)	37,002	27,322
Net loss	(15,681)	(19,512)	(110,440)	(58,652)
Dividend equivalent on Series A Preferred Stock related to beneficial conversion feature	—	—	(16,375)	—
Cumulative dividends for Series A Preferred Stock	—	—	(1,225)	(1,264)
Net loss attributable to common stockholders	$ (15,681)	$ (19,512)	$ (128,040)	$ (59,916)
Weighted average outstanding common shares	67,827,401	69,721,078	138,895,681	150,569,877
Earnings per share:			—	
Basic and diluted	$ (0.23)	$ (0.28)	$ (0.92)	$ (0.40)

19. Subsequent Events

The Company performed its subsequent event procedures through March 19, 2019, the date these consolidated financial statements were made available for issuance.

ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE

None.

ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES

Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures

Our management, with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer ("CEO") and our Chief Financial Officer ("CFO"), evaluated the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures as of December 31, 2018. The term "disclosure controls and procedures," as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), means controls and other procedures of a company that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act are recorded, processed, summarized and reported, within the time periods specified in the SEC's rules and forms. Disclosure controls and procedures include, without limitation, controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by a company in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to the company's management, including its principal executive officer and principal financial officer, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure. In designing and evaluating the disclosure controls and procedures, management recognizes that any controls and procedures, no matter how well designed and operated, can provide only reasonable assurance of achieving the desired control objectives. In addition, the design of disclosure controls and procedures must reflect the fact that there are resource constraints and that management is required to apply its judgment in evaluating the benefits of possible controls and procedures relative to their costs.

Based upon that evaluation, as discussed below, our CEO and CFO have concluded that, as of the end of the period covered by this Annual Report, our disclosure controls and procedures were not effective because of the material weaknesses in internal control over financial reporting described below.

Notwithstanding such material weaknesses in internal control over financial reporting, our management, including our CEO and CFO, has concluded that our consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, our financial position, results of our operations and our cash flows for the periods presented in this Annual Report, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting

Management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate "internal control over financial reporting," as defined in Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f) under the Exchange Act. Our internal control over financial reporting is designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles and includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the Company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the Company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the Company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the Company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements. All internal control systems, no matter how well designed, have inherent limitations. Therefore, even those systems determined to be effective can provide only reasonable assurance with respect to financial statement preparation and presentation. Because of its inherent limitations, a system of internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements.

A material weakness is a deficiency, or combination of deficiencies, in internal control over financial reporting, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of annual or interim financial statements will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis.

On April 10, 2018, we completed the acquisition of Asterion International Group, whose financial statements constitute $18 million of total assets and $59.7 million of total revenues of the consolidated financial statements as of and for the year ended December 31, 2018. In accordance with SEC guidance, management has elected to exclude this acquisition from its 2018 assessment of and report on internal control over financial reporting.

Management assessed the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018 using the criteria set forth by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission in Internal Control-Integrated Framework (2013) (the "COSO 2013 Framework"). Based on its assessment, our management, including our CEO and CFO, has concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was not effective as of December 31, 2018 due to material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting described below.

Control Environment

We had insufficient internal resources with appropriate knowledge and expertise to design and implement, document and operate effective financial reporting processes and internal controls and to supervise control implementation activities provided by third party contractors during the reporting period.

We did not have formal policies and procedures to hold personnel accountable for their internal control responsibilities through performance measurement plans and goals, and our personnel did not have sufficient training on the COSO 2013 Framework and its implications on financial reporting and their related internal control roles and responsibilities.

Risk Assessment

We did not have an effective risk assessment process that defined clear financial reporting objectives and that identified and evaluated risks of misstatement due to error over certain financial reporting processes and developed internal controls to mitigate those risks. In addition, the Company did not determine modifications required to certain financial reporting processes and related control activities as a result of changes in the application of U.S. generally accepted accounting principles related to the planned adoption of ASC Topic 842, *Leases*, and in connection with a business acquisition.

Information and Communication

We did not establish sufficient controls over various information technology systems used by us to ensure that appropriate and accurate information was available to financial reporting personnel on a timely basis in order to fulfill control responsibilities.

Monitoring Activities

We did not design, implement and operate effective monitoring activities to ascertain whether the processes and internal controls related to the five COSO 2013 Framework components (and underlying principles) were present and functioning. We did not have a timely process to remediate existing control deficiencies.

Control Activities

As a consequence of the ineffective control environment, risk assessment, information and communication and monitoring activities components, we did not design, implement, and maintain effective control activities at the transaction level over certain significant accounts to mitigate the risk of material misstatement in financial reporting. We did not develop written policies and procedures at a sufficient level of detail or retain the required documentation to demonstrate the consistent and timely operation of the controls at a sufficient level of precision to prevent and detect potential misstatements.

The following deficiencies in control activities were identified:

Financial Statement Close and Reporting Process

We had ineffective design and implementation and operation of controls over the completeness, existence and accuracy of the financial statement close and reporting process and financial statement disclosures.

GITCs and Automated Controls

We did not design and maintain effective complementary entity user controls and effective general information technology controls ("GITCs") for the information systems related to transactions processed by service organizations on our behalf. Specifically, we did not:

- establish effective complementary entity user controls and effective financial and IT user access controls for the IT systems managed by service organizations related to payroll and certain revenue transactions across all components and procurement at the Novitex component to ensure appropriate segregation of duties and to adequately restrict user and privileged access to appropriate personnel;
- establish program change management controls related to procurement at the Novitex component to ensure that all program changes were subject to appropriate approval and testing before the launch of the program changes into live production and post-implementation testing; and
- assign responsibility and authority to individuals who were responsible for managing the financial reporting and control activities conducted by the service organizations on our behalf.

We did not design and maintain effective GITCs over IT applications supporting the procurement process at two components, BancTec Americas and Rust. We did not design effective GITCs over IT applications supporting the lease IT application at Novitex. Specifically, we did not design and implement and operate effective GITCs over these IT systems including:

- establish a baseline operation of these IT systems to ensure they operated as intended in accordance with financial reporting and business objectives;
- establish program change management controls to ensure that all program changes were subject to appropriate approval and testing before the launch of the program changes into live production and post-implementation testing; and
- establish effective user access controls to ensure appropriate segregation of duties and to adequately restrict user and privileged access to appropriate financial and IT personnel

Accordingly, automated process-level controls and manual controls that are dependent upon the information derived from these IT systems related to payroll, revenue, procurement and leases are also determined to be ineffective as noted in *Other Control Activities* below.

Other Control Activities

We had ineffective design and implementation and operation of other control activities affecting the following consolidated accounts or at specific components as described:

- The completeness, existence and accuracy of revenue and deferred revenue transactions, including customer deposits and accounts receivable.
- The completeness, existence and accuracy of the procurement of goods and services and invoice processing and the completeness and accuracy and presentation of accounts payable and accrued liabilities and operating expenses.
- The completeness, existence, accuracy and presentation of payroll and related expenses and accrued compensation and benefits.
- The completeness, existence and accuracy of lease expense, capital lease obligations and the presentation of operating and capital lease disclosures.

- The completeness, existence and accuracy of fixed assets additions and disposals and related depreciation at the Novitex component.
- The completeness and accuracy of restricted cash and obligation for claim payments and the presentation of restricted cash at the Rust component
- The completeness and accuracy of outsource contract cost additions in the current year

Some of these control deficiencies resulted in immaterial misstatements to the preliminary consolidated financial statements that were corrected prior to the issuance of the consolidated financial statements. These control deficiencies create a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement to the consolidated financial statements will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis, and therefore we concluded that the deficiencies represent material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting and our internal control over financial reporting was not effective as of December 31, 2018.

Our independent registered public accounting firm, KPMG, LLP, who audited the consolidated financial statements included in this annual report, has expressed an adverse report on the operating effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. KPMG LLP's report appears on page 67 of this Annual Report.

Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting

2017 Material Weakness

We implemented internal controls over financial reporting (as such term is defined in Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f) under the Exchange Act) over financial reporting during 2018 in response to no longer being classified as an emerging growth company and being required to report on the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting.

In 2017, we disclosed the following material weakness:

> *We lack formal policies and procedures and related controls related to the supervision of specialists engaged to assist management in developing accounting conclusions with respect to a specific revenue contract and stock-based compensation.*

In response, we made the following changes in our internal control over financial reporting during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 to remediate this material weakness in internal control over financial reporting, specifically:

- assigned roles and responsibilities and held individuals accountable for managing the relationship with the external specialists;
- designed and implemented written policies and procedures to address our review and supervision of work performed by specialists on our behalf;
- designed and implemented controls to address the completeness, existence and accuracy of the calculations and work product prepared by the specialists in specific areas related to the accounting for a specific revenue contract and stock-based compensation as noted in the prior year's material weakness.

2018 Interim Material Weaknesses

During the quarter ended June 30, 2018, the Company identified material weaknesses in general information technology controls as follows:

- We did not design and maintain effective GITCs related to all information technology enterprise resource planning systems (ERP systems) and certain supporting revenue databases used in all of our financial reporting. Specifically, the Company did not have effective systems development, program change management or logical access controls to support its IT operating systems, databases and IT applications.

- We did not design and maintain effective GITCs over electronic report writers used to extract information from IT systems in the analysis of financial information.

- We did not design and maintain effective complementary entity user access controls for the information systems related to payroll and certain revenue transactions processed by service organizations across all components; and effective complementary entity user controls related to user access and program change over procurement transactions processed by service organizations at the Novitex component.

Accordingly, all automated process level controls and manual controls that were dependent upon the completeness and accuracy of information derived from these IT systems were also ineffective.

The Company completed the following remediation activities to address these material weaknesses except for those material weaknesses described above under section Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting:

- designed and communicated written policies and procedures over systems development process, program change management and logical access over the certain ERP systems, revenue databases at these components and over the use of report writers in financial reporting processes and controls at these components;

- designed and implemented and operated effective GITCs over these IT systems including:
    - established a baseline operation of the IT systems to ensure it operated as it was intended in accordance with financial reporting and business objectives;
    - established program change management controls to ensure that all program changes were subject to appropriate approval and testing before the launch of the program changes into live production and post-implementation testing;
    - established effective user access controls to ensure appropriate segregation of duties and to adequately restrict user and privileged access to appropriate financial and IT personnel;

- established effective oversight and monitoring activities over the Company's IT and financial reporting systems.

Management concluded based on the remediation actions described above that our GITCs were designed and implemented effectively as of December 31, 2018 related to the ERP, revenue databases and report writers across all components. However, we did not have sufficient time to remediate all our material weaknesses related to IT systems.

Except for the material weaknesses described above under Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting that occurred throughout the year, and the remediation of the 2017 and 2018 Interim Material Weaknesses described above, there were no other changes in our internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the year ended December 31, 2018 that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

Remediation Plan

We identified and began to implement several steps, as further described below, to remediate the material weaknesses described in this Item 9A and to enhance our overall control environment. We are committed to ensuring that our internal controls over financial reporting are designed and operating effectively.

Our remediation process includes, but is not limited to:

- hiring additional internal and external resources to design, implement and enforce internal control responsibilities;

- hiring internal resources with appropriate knowledge and expertise to operate effectively financial reporting processes and internal controls;

- holding educational sessions with relevant personnel on COSO 2013 Framework and their financial reporting and related internal control responsibilities;

- implementing specific measures to hold individuals accountable for their internal control responsibilities;

- strengthening our GITCs with improved documentation standards, technical oversight and training related to payroll and procurement transactions processed by service organizations; and

- designing specific written review policies and procedures to improve controls in revenue, restricted cash, outsource contract costs additions, financial statement close and reporting process, and accounting for leases and the related disclosures.

We are working diligently to have our enhanced review procedures and documentation standards in place and operating effectively.

ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION

None.

PART III

ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS, AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Information about our executive officers is contained in the section titled "Executive Officers" in Part I of this Annual Report.

The other information required by this Item will be included in our Proxy Statement for the 2019 Annual General Meeting of Shareholders under the captions "Director Nominees," "Continuing Members of the Board of Directors," "Additional Information Concerning the Board of Directors of the Company," Committees of the Board of Directors" and "Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance," which will be filed with the SEC no later than 120 days after the close of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 and is incorporated by reference in this Annual Report.

ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

The information required by this Item will be included in our Proxy Statement for the 2019 Annual General Meeting of Shareholders under the captions "Executive Compensation" and "Director Remuneration," which will be filed with the SEC no later than 120 days after the close of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 and is incorporated by reference in this Annual Report.

ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS

The information required by this Item will be included in our Proxy Statement for the 2019 Annual General Meeting of Shareholders under the caption "Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management" and "Securities Authorized for Issuance under Equity Compensation Plans," which will be filed with the SEC no later than 120 days after the close of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 and is incorporated by reference in this Annual Report.

ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE

The information required by this Item will be included in our Proxy Statement for the 2019 Annual General Meeting of Shareholders under the captions "Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions" and "Director Independence," which will be filed with the SEC no later than 120 days after the close of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 and is incorporated by reference in this Annual Report.

ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTING FEES AND SERVICES

The information required by this Item will be included in our Proxy Statement for the 2019 Annual General Meeting of Shareholders under the caption "Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm Fees" which will be filed with the SEC no later than 120 days after the close of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 and is incorporated by reference in this Annual Report.

ITEM 15. EXHIBITS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES

a) (1) Financial Statements

(a)(3) Exhibits

Exhibit No.	Description	Filed or Furnished Herewith
2.1	Novitex Business Combination Agreement, dated as of February 21, 2017, by and among Quinpario Acquisition Corp. 2, Quinpario Merger Sub I, Inc., Quinpario Merger Sub II, Inc., Novitex Holdings, Inc., SourceHOV Holdings, Inc., Novitex Parent, L.P, HOVS LLC and HandsOn Fund 4 I, LLC (2)	
3.1	Restated Certificate of Incorporation, dated July 12, 2017(4)	
3.2	Amended and Restated Bylaws, dated July 12, 2017(4)	
3.3	Certificate of Designations, Preferences, Rights and Limitations of Series A Perpetual Convertible Preferred Stock(4)	
3.4	Waiver of Bylaws(5)	
4.1	Specimen Common Stock Certificate(1)	
4.2	Specimen Warrant Certificate(1)	
4.3	Form of Warrant Agreement between Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company and the Registrant(1)	
4.4	Indenture, dated July 12, 2017, by and among Exela Intermediate LLC and Exela Finance Inc. as Issuers, the Subsidiary Guarantors set forth therein and Wilmington Trust, National Association, as Trustee(4)	
4.5	First Supplemental Indenture, dated July 12, 2017, by and among Exela Intermediate LLC and Exela Finance Inc., as Issuers, the Subsidiary Guarantors set forth therein and Wilmington Trust, National Association, as Trustee(4)	
10.1	Modification Agreement, dated as of June 15, 2017(3)	
10.2	Amended & Restated Registration Rights Agreement, dated July 12, 2017, by and among the Company and the Holders(4)	
10.3	Director Nomination Agreement, dated July 12, 2017, by and between the Company and Apollo Novitex Holdings, L.P.(4)	
10.4	Exela Technologies, Inc. Director Nomination Agreement, dated July 12, 2017, by and among the Company, the HGM Group and Ex-Sigma 2 LLC(4)	

Exhibit No.	Description	Filed or Furnished Herewith
10.5	First Amendment to First Lien Credit Agreement, dated July 13, 2018, by and among Exela Intermediate Holdings LLC, Exela Intermediate LLC, the Lenders Party Thereto, Royal Bank of Canada, RBC Capital Markets, Credit Suisse Securities (USA) LLC, Natixis, New York Branch and KKR Capital Markets LLC(6)	
21.1	Subsidiaries of Exela Technologies Inc.	Filed
23.1	Consent of KPMG LLP	Filed
31.1	Certification of the Principal Executive Officer required by Rule 13a-14(a) and Rule 15d-14(a) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes Oxley Act of 2002	Filed
31.2	Certification of the Principal Financial and Accounting Officer required by Rule 13a-14(a) and Rule 15d-14(a) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes Oxley Act of 2002	Filed
32.1	Certification of the Principal Executive Officer required by 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes Oxley Act of 2002	Furnished
32.2	Certification of the Principal Financial and Accounting Officer required by 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes Oxley Act of 2002	Furnished
101.INS	XBRL Instance Document	Filed
101.SCH	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema	Filed
101.CAL	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase	Filed
101.DEF	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase	Filed
101.LAB	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase	Filed
101.PRE	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase	Filed

(1) Incorporated by reference to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (SEC File No. 333-198988).

(2) Incorporated by reference to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on February 22, 2017.

(3) Incorporated by reference to the Registrants' Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on June 21, 2017.

(4) Incorporated by reference to the Registrants' Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on July 18, 2017.

(5) Incorporated by reference to the Registrants' Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on December 21, 2017.

(6) Incorporated by reference to the Registrants' Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on July 17, 2018.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, the Registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

Dated: March 19, 2019	By: /s/ RONALD COGBURN Ronald Cogburn, *Chief Executive Officer*

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the Registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

Dated: March 19, 2019	By: /s/ RONALD COGBURN Ronald Cogburn, *Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer) and Director*
Dated: March 19, 2019	By: /s/ JIM REYNOLDS Jim Reynolds, *Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer) and Director*
Dated: March 19, 2019	By: /s/ PAR CHADHA Par Chadha, *Chairman of the Board of Directors*
Dated: March 19, 2019	By: /s/ MATTHEW H. NORD Matthew H. Nord, *Director*
Dated: March 19, 2019	By: /s/ JOSHUA M. BLACK Joshua M. Black, *Director*
Dated: March 19, 2019	By: /s/ NATHANIEL J. LIPMAN Nathaniel J. Lipman, *Director*
Dated: March 19, 2019	By: /s/ JOHN H. REXFORD John H. Rexford, *Director*

Exhibit 21.1

SUBSIDIARIES OF REGISTRANT

Subsidiary Name	Jurisdiction of Formation
Arista SA	France
ARSIoane UK Ltd.	U.K.
Asterion Belgium N.V.	Belgium
Asterion Denmark A/S	Denmark
Asterion DM Finland A.B.	Finland
Asterion France S.A.S.	France
Asterion International GmbH.	Germany
Asterion Sweden A.B.	Sweden
BancTec (Puerto Rico), Inc.	Delaware
BancTec B.V.	Netherlands
BancTec Business Outsourcing SAS	France
BancTec ECM Solutions GmbH	Germany
BancTec Europe Limited	U.K.
BancTec Group LLC	Delaware
BancTec Holding N.V.	Netherlands
BancTec Inc.	Canada
BancTec Inc.	Phillippines
BancTec India Pvt. Ltd.	India
BancTec Intermediate Holding, Inc.	Delaware
BancTec OU	Estonia
BancTec S.A.	France
Banctec TPS India Private Ltd.	India
BancTec Transaktionservice GmbH	Austria
BancTec, Inc.	Delaware
BillSmart Solutions, LLC	Delaware
BTC International Holdings, Inc.	Delaware
BTC Ventures, Inc.	Delaware
Charter Lason, Inc.	Delaware
CorpSource Holdings, LLC	Delaware
Dataforce Interact Holdings Ltd.	U.K.
Dataforce Interact Ltd.	U.K.
Deliverex, LLC	Delaware
DF Property Portfolio Ltd.	U.K.
DFG UK, LLC	Delaware
DFG2 Holdings, LLC	Delaware
DFG2, LLC.	Delaware
DocuData Solutions, L.C.	Texas
Drescher Euro-Label Sp Z.o.o.	Poland
Drescher Full-Service Versand GmbH	Germany
Economic Research Services, Inc.	Florida
Exela Enterprise Solutions, Inc.	Delaware
Exela Intermediate Holdings, LLC	Delaware
Exela Intermediate, LLC.	Delaware
Exela RE LLC	Delaware
Exela Technologies AB	Sweden
Exela Technologies AS	Norway
Exela Technologies BV	Netherlands
Exela Technologies GmbH.	Germany
Exela Technologies Holding GmbH	Germany
Exela Technologies Ibercia S.A.	Spain
Exela Technologies Limited.	U.K.
Exela Technologies s.p. z.o.o.	Poland
Exela Technologies, Inc.	Delaware
Fedasco France SAS	France
Fedasco SA	Morocco
FTS Parent Inc.	Delaware
Glo-X, Inc.	Oklahoma
HOV Enterprise Services, Inc.	New Jersey
HOV Global Services Ltd.	U.K.
HOV Services, (Beijing) Ltd.	China
HOV Services, (Nanchang) Ltd.	China
HOV Services, Inc.	Delaware
HOV Services, LLC	Nevada
HOVG, LLC	Nevada
Ibis Consulting, Inc.	Rhode Island
Imagenes Digitales S.A. de C.V.	Mexico
J & B Software, Inc.	Pennsylvania
Kinsella Media, LLC	Delaware
Lason International, Inc.	Delaware
LexiCode Healthcare, Inc.	Phillippines
Managed Care Professionals, LLC	Delaware
Meridian Consulting Group, LLC	Nevada
Novitex Acquisition, LLC	Delaware
Novitex Enterprise Solutions Canada, Inc.	Canada
Novitex Government Solutions, LLC	Delaware
Novitex Holdings, Inc.	Delaware
Novitex Intermediate, LLC	Delaware
O.T. Drescher AG	Switzerland
Orone Belgium SA	Belgium
Orone Contract SARL	Morocco
Pangea Acquisitions, Inc.	Delaware
Plexus Europe Ltd.	U.K.
Promotora de Tecnolgia, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico
RC4 Capital, LLC	Delaware
Recognition de Mexico S.A. de C.V.	Mexico
Recognition Mexico Holding, Inc.	Delaware
Regulus America LLC	Delaware
Regulus Group II LLC	Delaware
Regulus Group LLC	Delaware
Regulus Holding Inc.	Delaware
Regulus Integrated Solutions LLC	Delaware
Regulus West LLC	Delaware
Rust Consulting, Inc.	Minnesota
Rustic Canyon III, LLC	Delaware

Subsidiary Name	Jurisdiction of Formation
S-Corp Philippines, Inc.	Phillippines
SDS Applications Limited	U.K.
SDS Trading Applications Limited	U.K.
Services Integration Group, L.P.	Delaware
SIG-G.P., L.L.C.	Delaware
SourceCorp BPS, Inc.	Delaware
Sourcecorp de Mexico S.A. de C.V.	Mexico
SourceCorp Legal, Inc.	Delaware
SourceCorp Management, Inc.	Texas
SOURCECORP, Inc.	Delaware
SourceHOV Canada	Nova Scotia
SourceHOV HealthCare, Inc.	South Carolina
SourceHOV Holdings, Inc.	Delaware
SourceHOV India Pvt. Ltd.	India
SourceHOV LLC	Delaware
SourceHOV Tax, Inc.	Texas
TRAC Holdings, LLC	Delaware
TRAC, LLC	Nevada
TransCentra FTS Private Ltd.	India
TransCentra, Inc.	Delaware
United Information Services, Inc.	Iowa

Exhibit 23.1

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

The Board of Directors
Exela Technologies, Inc.:

We consent to the incorporation by reference in the registration statements (No. 333-222973), (No. 333-219494), and (No. 333-219157) on Form S-3 and the registration statement (No. 333-222743) on Form S-8 of Exela Technologies, Inc. of our report dated March 19, 2019, with respect to the consolidated balance sheets of Exela Technologies, Inc. and subsidiaries as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss, stockholders' deficit, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 2018, and the related notes, and the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018, which reports appear in the December 31, 2018 annual report on Form 10-K of Exela Technologies, Inc. (the Company)

Our report dated March 19, 2019 with respect to the consolidated financial statements refers to a change in the Company's method of accounting for revenue recognition.

Our report dated March 19, 2019, on the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018, expresses our opinion that the Company did not maintain effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018 because of the effect of material weaknesses on the achievement of the objectives of the control criteria and contains an explanatory paragraph that states the following material weaknesses have been identified and included in management's assessment:

- Ineffective control environment related to:
  - insufficient internal resources with appropriate knowledge and expertise
  - ineffective supervision of control implementation activities provided by third party contractors; and
  - ineffective policies and procedures to hold people accountable for their financial reporting and related internal control responsibilities and insufficient training of personnel on the COSO 2013 Framework
- Ineffective risk assessment process related to:
  - failure to identify and evaluate risks of misstatement over certain financial reporting processes; and
  - failure to determine modifications necessary in certain financial reporting processes and related control activities due to changes in the application of U.S. generally accepted accounting principles and in connection with a business acquisition.
- Ineffective information and communications controls over the reliability and timeliness of information available to financial reporting personnel.
- Ineffective monitoring activities related to the five COSO 2013 Framework components and underlying principles and the timely remediation of existing control deficiencies.
- Ineffective written policies and procedures and documentation to demonstrate the consistent and timely operation of the controls.
- Ineffective general information technology controls and automated controls:

– Ineffective complementary entity user controls and ineffective certain general information technology controls related to payroll, revenue and procurement transactions processed by certain service organizations at some or all components;
– Ineffective general information technology controls over IT applications supporting procurement and leasing financial reporting processes at certain components; and
– Ineffective automated process-level controls and manual controls that are dependent upon the information derived from those affected IT systems

- Ineffective control activities related to the following consolidated accounts:

– the completeness, existence and accuracy of the financial statement close and reporting process and financial statement disclosures;
– the completeness, existence and accuracy of revenue and deferred revenue transactions, including customer deposits and accounts receivable;
– the completeness, existence and accuracy of the procurement of goods and services and invoice processing and the completeness and accuracy and presentation of accounts payable and accrued liabilities and operating expenses;
– the completeness, existence, accuracy and presentation of payroll and related expenses and accrued compensation and benefits;
– the completeness, existence and accuracy of lease expense, capital lease obligations and the presentation of operating and capital lease disclosures; and
– the completeness and accuracy of outsource contract cost additions in the current year.

- Ineffective control activities related to:

– the completeness, existence and accuracy of fixed assets additions and disposals and related depreciation at the Novitex component; and
– the completeness and accuracy of restricted cash and obligation for claim payments and the presentation of restricted cash at the Rust component.

Our report dated March 19, 2019, on the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018, contains an explanatory paragraph that states that the Company acquired Asterion International Group during 2018, and management excluded from its assessment of the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018, Asterion International Group's internal control over financial reporting associated with total assets of $18 million and total revenues of $59.7 million included in the consolidated financial statements of the Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 2018. Our audit of internal control over financial reporting of the Company also excluded an evaluation of the internal control over financial reporting of Asterion International Group.

/s/ KPMG LLP

Dallas, Texas
March 19, 2019

Exhibit 31.1

CERTIFICATION

I, Ronald Cogburn, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2018 of Exela Technologies, Inc.;

2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;

3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;

4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:

(a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;

(b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

(c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and

(d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and

5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):

(a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and

(b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 19, 2019

/s/ Ronald Cogburn
Name: Ronald Cogburn
Title: Chief Executive Officer
(Principal Executive Officer)

Exhibit 31.2

CERTIFICATION

I, James G. Reynolds, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2018 of Exela Technologies, Inc.;

2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;

3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;

4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:

   (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;

   (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

   (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and

   (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and

5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):

   (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and

   (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 19, 2019

/s/ James G. Reynolds
Name: James G. Reynolds
Title: Chief Financial Officer
(Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)

Exhibit 32.1

CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO 18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350, AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002

In connection with the Annual Report of Exela Technologies, Inc. (the "Company") on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2018 as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), I, Ronald Cogburn, Chief Executive Officer of the Company, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

(1) The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and

(2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Date: March 19, 2019

/s/ Ronald Cogburn
Name: Ronald Cogburn
Title: Chief Executive Officer
(Principal Executive Officer)

A signed original of this written statement required by Section 906 has been provided to the Company and will be retained by the Company and furnished to the Securities and Exchange Commission or its staff upon request.

Exhibit 32.2

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350,
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO
SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

In connection with the Annual Report of Exela Technologies, Inc. (the "Company") on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2018, as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), I, James G. Reynolds, Chief Financial Officer of the Company, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

(1) The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and

(2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Date: March 19, 2019

/s/ James G. Reynolds
Name: James G. Reynolds
Title: Chief Financial Officer
(Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)

A signed original of this written statement required by Section 906 has been provided to the Company and will be retained by the Company and furnished to the Securities and Exchange Commission or its staff upon request.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned hereunto duly authorized.

Dated: March 19, 2019

EXELA TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

By: /s/ James G. Reynolds
Name: James G. Reynolds
Title: Chief Financial Officer

(This page has been left blank intentionally.)

(This page has been left blank intentionally.)

exelatech.com | 1 844-XELATEC